



2000Xc Power Supply

Operating Manual

Branson Ultrasonics Corp.
120 Park Ridge Road
Brookfield, CT 06804
(203) 796-0400
<http://www.bransonultrasonics.com>

BRANSON

Manual Change Information

At Branson, we strive to maintain our position as the leader in ultrasonics plastics joining, metal welding, cleaning and related technologies by continually improving our circuits and components in our equipment. These improvements are incorporated as soon as they are developed and thoroughly tested.

Information concerning any improvements will be added to the appropriate technical documentation at its next revision and printing. Therefore, when requesting service assistance for specific units, note the Revision information found on this document, and refer to the printing date which appears in this page.

Copyright and Trademark Notice

Copyright © 2025 Branson Ultrasonics Corporation. All rights reserved. Contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any form without the written permission of Branson Ultrasonics Corporation.

Mylar is a registered trademark of DuPont Teijin Films.

Loctite is a registered trademark of Loctite Corporation.

WD-40 is a registered trademark of WD-40 Company.

Windows 10, Windows 7, Windows Vista, and Windows XP are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Other trademarks and service marks mentioned herein are held by their respective owners.

Foreword

Congratulations on your choice of a Branson Ultrasonics Corporation system!

The Branson 2000Xc Power Supply system is process equipment for the joining of plastic parts using ultrasonic energy. It is the newest generation of product using this sophisticated technology for a variety of customer applications. This Operating Manual is part of the documentation set for this system, and should be kept with the equipment.

Thank you for choosing Branson!

Introduction

This manual is arranged into several structured chapters which will help you find the information you may need to know to safely handle, install, set up, program, operate, and/or maintain this product. Please refer to the [Table of Contents](#) and/or the [Index](#) of this manual to find the information you may be looking for. In the event you require additional assistance or information, please contact our Product Support department (see [1.5.3 Departments to Contact](#) for information on how to contact them) or your local Branson representative.

Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Safety and Support

| | | |
|-----|--------------------------------------------|----|
| 1.1 | Safety Requirements and Warnings | 2 |
| 1.2 | General Precautions | 6 |
| 1.3 | Warranty | 9 |
| 1.4 | How to Contact Branson | 10 |
| 1.5 | Returning Equipment for Repair | 11 |
| 1.6 | Obtaining Replacement Parts | 14 |

Chapter 2: Introduction

| | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------|----|
| 2.1 | Models Covered | 16 |
| 2.2 | Compatibility with Branson Products | 20 |
| 2.3 | Features of the System | 21 |
| 2.4 | Power Supply Front Panel Controls | 24 |
| 2.5 | Actuator Controls and Indicators | 25 |
| 2.6 | 21 CFR Part 11 Capability | 26 |
| 2.7 | Glossary | 27 |

Chapter 3: Delivery and Handling

| | | |
|-----|---------------------------------|----|
| 3.1 | Shipping and Handling | 38 |
| 3.2 | Receiving | 39 |
| 3.3 | Unpacking | 40 |
| 3.4 | Returning Equipment | 41 |

Chapter 4: Technical Specifications

| | | |
|-----|------------------------------------|----|
| 4.1 | Technical Specifications | 44 |
| 4.2 | Physical Description | 47 |

Chapter 5: Installation and Setup

| | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------|----|
| 5.1 | About Installation | 56 |
| 5.2 | Handling and Unpacking | 57 |
| 5.3 | Take Inventory of Small Parts | 60 |
| 5.4 | Installation Requirements | 62 |
| 5.5 | Installation Steps | 71 |
| 5.6 | Guards and Safety Equipment | 84 |
| 5.7 | Rack Mount Installation | 85 |
| 5.8 | Assemble the Acoustic Stack | 87 |
| 5.9 | Mounting the Fixture on the Base | 94 |
| 5.10 | Testing the Installation | 95 |
| 5.11 | Still Need Help? | 96 |

Chapter 6: Power Supply Operation

| | | |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.1 | 2000Xc Factory Default User and Password Setting | 99 |
| 6.2 | Operating System | 100 |
| 6.3 | Enable Remote Desktop Connectivity | 101 |
| 6.4 | 2000Xc Power Supply External Communication Functions | 104 |
| 6.5 | Front Panel Controls | 114 |
| 6.6 | Power-Up and Navigation of the 2000Xc Power Supply | 115 |
| 6.7 | Testing the Welding System | 117 |
| 6.8 | Weld Results | 118 |

| | | |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.9 | Main Menu | 119 |
| 6.10 | Weld Setup | 120 |
| 6.11 | System Configuration | 136 |
| 6.12 | Screen Setup | 159 |
| 6.13 | System Information | 161 |
| 6.14 | View Current Setup | 163 |
| 6.15 | Diagnostics | 164 |
| 6.16 | Horn Down | 170 |
| 6.17 | Weld History | 171 |
| 6.18 | Save/Recall Presets | 172 |
| 6.19 | Sequencing Presets | 176 |
| 6.20 | Calibration | 178 |
| 6.21 | USB | 181 |
| 6.22 | Alarm Log | 183 |
| 6.23 | Event History | 184 |
| 6.24 | Login | 185 |
| 6.25 | Graphs | 188 |
| Chapter 7: Actuator Operation | | |
| 7.1 | Actuator Controls | 190 |
| 7.2 | Initial Actuator Settings | 192 |
| 7.3 | Operating the Actuator | 195 |
| 7.4 | Safety Circuit Alarms | 196 |
| Chapter 8: Maintenance | | |
| 8.1 | Calibration | 198 |
| 8.2 | Periodic and Preventive Maintenance | 199 |
| 8.3 | Parts Lists | 204 |
| 8.4 | Power Supply Parts Lists | 207 |
| 8.5 | Circuits | 210 |
| 8.6 | Troubleshooting | 211 |
| 8.7 | Service Events | 214 |
| 8.8 | Parts Replacement | 216 |
| Appendix A: FAQ | | |
| A.1 | FAQ: 2000Xc Series | 230 |
| Appendix B: Alarms | | |
| B.1 | System Alarm Tables | 234 |
| Appendix C: Events | | |
| C.1 | Events | 268 |
| Appendix D: Web Services | | |
| D.1 | Web Services | 272 |
| D.2 | Command List | 273 |
| D.3 | Error Codes | 285 |
| D.4 | IDs | 288 |
| Appendix E: Manual Revisions | | |
| E.1 | Manual Revisions | 302 |

List of Figures

Chapter 1: Safety and Support

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| Figure 1.1 | Safety label on the rear of the 2000Xc Power Supply | 4 |
| Figure 1.2 | Caution label on the 2000Xc Actuator for the factory air supply | 4 |
| Figure 1.3 | Safety label shown on the rear of the 2000Xc Actuator | 4 |
| Figure 1.4 | Connector label on the 2000Xc Actuator | 4 |
| Figure 1.5 | Safety Label on front of the 2000Xc Actuator. | 5 |
| Figure 1.6 | Safety Label in the Actuator | 5 |

Chapter 2: Introduction

| | | |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 2.1 | Left Side View of the 2000Xc Actuator | 16 |
| Figure 2.2 | 2000Xc Power Supply Front Panel Display after Power-Up. | 24 |

Chapter 3: Delivery and Handling

Chapter 4: Technical Specifications

| | | |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 4.1 | 2000Xc Actuator Pneumatic System | 49 |
| Figure 4.2 | Rear View of 2000Xc Power Supply | 51 |
| Figure 4.3 | Typical Converter. | 54 |

Chapter 5: Installation and Setup

| | | |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Figure 5.1 | Linear Encoder. | 57 |
| Figure 5.2 | Unpacking the Stand (Actuator on a Base) | 58 |
| Figure 5.3 | Ultrasonic Converter (J-Type for Stand-Alone Use) and Booster. | 59 |
| Figure 5.4 | Power Supply Dimensional Drawing | 63 |
| Figure 5.5 | 2000Xc Actuator Dimensional Drawing | 64 |
| Figure 5.6 | Block Wiring Diagram | 67 |
| Figure 5.7 | Base Mounting Centers | 72 |
| Figure 5.8 | Rear view of Actuator, showing Mounting Surface, Bolt and Guide Pin locations. | 73 |
| Figure 5.9 | Electrical Connections from Power Supply to a 2000Xc-series Actuator. | 76 |
| Figure 5.10 | Start Switch Connection Codes (CE Actuator) | 77 |
| Figure 5.11 | User I/O Cable Identification and Wire Color Diagram. | 79 |
| Figure 5.12 | International Harmonized Line Cord Color Code | 82 |
| Figure 5.13 | Actuator Emergency Stop Button | 84 |
| Figure 5.14 | Detail of Rack Mount Handle Kit Assembly. | 85 |
| Figure 5.15 | Assembling the 20 kHz Acoustic Stack | 90 |
| Figure 5.16 | Connecting Tip to Horn | 91 |
| Figure 5.17 | Installing a 20 kHz Stack in a Branson Actuator. | 92 |
| Figure 5.18 | Installing a 40 kHz Stack in a Branson Actuator. | 93 |
| Figure 5.19 | Mounting Holes on Base | 94 |
| Figure 5.20 | Front Panel Display. | 95 |

Chapter 6: Power Supply Operation

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 6.1 | UWF Configuration Utility | 100 |
| Figure 6.2 | Remote Desktop Panel | 101 |
| Figure 6.3 | Windows Defender Firewall | 101 |
| Figure 6.4 | Allow an app or feature through Windows Defender Firewall | 102 |
| Figure 6.5 | Enable Remote Desktop | 102 |
| Figure 6.6 | List of Rules. | 103 |
| Figure 6.7 | Enable Rule button. | 103 |

| | | |
|-------------|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 6.8 | System Configuration Menu | 104 |
| Figure 6.9 | Local Security Setting | 107 |
| Figure 6.10 | Windows Setup | 107 |
| Figure 6.11 | Server Box | 108 |
| Figure 6.12 | Remote Desktop Connection | 108 |
| Figure 6.13 | Enable "Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL" | 109 |
| Figure 6.14 | 2000Xc File on the desktop | 109 |
| Figure 6.15 | Remote Desktop Connection | 110 |
| Figure 6.16 | History Utility | 112 |
| Figure 6.17 | Front Panel of the 2000Xc Power Supply | 115 |
| Figure 6.18 | Weld Results | 118 |
| Figure 6.19 | Amplitude Step | 123 |
| Figure 6.20 | Pressure Step | 124 |
| Figure 6.21 | Rapid Traverse | 126 |
| Figure 6.22 | Hold Pressure | 126 |
| Figure 6.23 | Pretrigger | 127 |
| Figure 6.24 | Write In Field | 127 |
| Figure 6.25 | Batch Setup | 128 |
| Figure 6.26 | Afterburst | 128 |
| Figure 6.27 | Control Limits | 129 |
| Figure 6.28 | Act Clear Output | 130 |
| Figure 6.29 | Cycle Aborts | 130 |
| Figure 6.30 | Pressure Limit | 130 |
| Figure 6.31 | Power Match Curve | 131 |
| Figure 6.32 | Digital UPS | 132 |
| Figure 6.33 | Digital UPS Setup | 132 |
| Figure 6.34 | Setting Limits | 133 |
| Figure 6.35 | Energy Brake | 134 |
| Figure 6.36 | Frequency Offset | 134 |
| Figure 6.37 | Setup Limits | 135 |
| Figure 6.38 | User ID Setup | 137 |
| Figure 6.39 | Add User | 138 |
| Figure 6.40 | Operator Authority | 139 |
| Figure 6.41 | Cycle Counter | 139 |
| Figure 6.42 | Basic Mode | 140 |
| Figure 6.43 | 2000Xc Icon | 141 |
| Figure 6.44 | Language Utility Icon | 142 |
| Figure 6.45 | Language Utility | 142 |
| Figure 6.46 | Bargraph Scales | 145 |
| Figure 6.47 | Column Setup | 145 |
| Figure 6.48 | Column Setup | 145 |
| Figure 6.49 | Column Already Selected | 146 |
| Figure 6.50 | Beepers | 146 |
| Figure 6.51 | Actuator Settings | 148 |
| Figure 6.52 | Sys Components | 150 |
| Figure 6.53 | Component Verify | 151 |
| Figure 6.54 | RS-232c | 153 |
| Figure 6.55 | Setting up the Digital Interface Gateway | 157 |
| Figure 6.56 | Screen Setup | 159 |
| Figure 6.57 | Color Setup | 160 |
| Figure 6.58 | System Information | 161 |
| Figure 6.59 | Firmware Upload | 162 |
| Figure 6.60 | View Current Setup | 163 |
| Figure 6.61 | Diagnostics | 164 |
| Figure 6.62 | Cold Start | 166 |
| Figure 6.63 | Actuator Cold Start | 166 |
| Figure 6.64 | Horn Signature | 167 |

| | |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 6.65 Scanning | 168 |
| Figure 6.66 Scan Complete. | 168 |
| Figure 6.67 Horn Signature Graph. | 168 |
| Figure 6.68 Diagnostic User I/O | 169 |
| Figure 6.69 Horn Down | 170 |
| Figure 6.70 Weld History | 171 |
| Figure 6.71 Save/Recall Presets | 172 |
| Figure 6.72 Save. | 173 |
| Figure 6.73 USB Memory | 174 |
| Figure 6.74 Preset Validation | 175 |
| Figure 6.75 Sequencing Presets | 176 |
| Figure 6.76 USB Memory | 177 |
| Figure 6.77 Calibration. | 179 |
| Figure 6.78 Cal Actuator | 180 |
| Figure 6.79 Cal Amplitude | 180 |
| Figure 6.80 USB | 181 |
| Figure 6.81 Copy Now | 181 |
| Figure 6.82 Delete Data | 182 |
| Figure 6.83 Streaming Data Setup | 182 |
| Figure 6.84 Alarm Log | 183 |
| Figure 6.85 Event History. | 184 |
| Figure 6.86 Login | 185 |
| Figure 6.87 Login | 186 |
| Figure 6.88 Change Password. | 186 |
| Figure 6.89 Graphs | 188 |
| Figure 6.90 View Graph | 188 |

Chapter 7: Actuator Operation

Chapter 8: Maintenance

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 8.1 Interconnect Diagram, EDP 933-132-2023 | 210 |
| Figure 8.2 Alarm Signal Displayed on the System Information Screen | 211 |
| Figure 8.3 Component Location of 2000Xc Modules | 217 |
| Figure 8.4 Front Panel, Exploded Parts View | 218 |
| Figure 8.5 SBC PC Board Connector Layout | 223 |
| Figure 8.6 Lineboard EDP 100-242-1199R* | 225 |

Appendix A: FAQ

Appendix B: Alarms

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Figure B.1 Alarm Log | 234 |
|--------------------------------|-----|

Appendix C: Events

Appendix D: Web Services

Appendix E: Manual Revisions

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Figure E.1 Location of the information Label in the 2000Xc Power Supply. | 302 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|

List of Tables

Chapter 1: Safety and Support

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 1.1 | Safety label on the front of the actuator | 5 |
| Table 1.2 | Branson Contacts | 13 |

Chapter 2: Introduction

| | | |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 2.1 | 2000Xc Power Supply Compatibility with Branson Converters | 20 |
| Table 2.2 | 2000Xc Power Supply Front Panel Display after Power-Up | 24 |
| Table 2.3 | Glossary | 27 |

Chapter 3: Delivery and Handling

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------------------|----|
| Table 3.1 | Environmental Specifications | 38 |
| Table 3.2 | Receiving | 39 |
| Table 3.3 | Unpacking Procedure | 40 |

Chapter 4: Technical Specifications

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 4.1 | Environmental Specifications | 44 |
| Table 4.2 | Electrical Input Operating Voltages | 44 |
| Table 4.3 | Input Current and Fuse Requirements | 45 |
| Table 4.4 | Maximum Welding Force (at 100 psig and 4.0" stroke) | 46 |
| Table 4.5 | Dynamic Trigger Force | 46 |
| Table 4.6 | Dynamic Follow-Through | 46 |
| Table 4.7 | Maximum Traverse Speed (Application dependant) | 46 |
| Table 4.8 | Description of Controls on Base | 47 |
| Table 4.9 | 2000Xc Actuator Pneumatic System | 49 |
| Table 4.10 | Connections on Rear of Power Supply | 51 |

Chapter 5: Installation and Setup

| | | |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Table 5.1 | Small Parts included (=x) with Power Supply and/or Actuator Assemblies | 60 |
| Table 5.2 | List of Cables | 61 |
| Table 5.3 | Electrical Input Power Ratings Requirements | 68 |
| Table 5.4 | Cubic Feet of air per minute per inch of stroke length (each direction) | 70 |
| Table 5.5 | User I/O Cable Pin Assignments | 80 |
| Table 5.6 | Inputs/Outputs | 82 |
| Table 5.7 | User I/O DIP Switch Functions | 83 |
| Table 5.8 | Rack Mount Installation | 85 |
| Table 5.9 | Tools, Grease and Mylar Washers | 87 |
| Table 5.10 | For a 20 kHz System | 88 |
| Table 5.11 | For a 30 kHz System | 88 |
| Table 5.12 | For a 40 kHz System | 89 |
| Table 5.13 | Stud Torque Values | 90 |
| Table 5.14 | Tip to Horn Torque Specifications | 91 |

Chapter 6: Power Supply Operation

| | | |
|-----------|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 6.1 | Download Data to USB | 111 |
| Table 6.2 | Branson 2000Xc History Utility | 112 |
| Table 6.3 | Main Menu screen | 115 |
| Table 6.4 | Testing the Welding System | 117 |
| Table 6.5 | Main Menu, Page 1 | 119 |
| Table 6.6 | Main Menu, Page 2 | 119 |

| | | |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 6.7 | Weld Setup, Page 1 | 120 |
| Table 6.8 | Weld Setup, Page 2 | 120 |
| Table 6.9 | Weld Setup, Page 3 | 120 |
| Table 6.10 | Weld Setup, Page 4 | 120 |
| Table 6.11 | Weld Modes | 121 |
| Table 6.12 | Batch Setup | 128 |
| Table 6.13 | System Configuration, Page 01 | 136 |
| Table 6.14 | System Configuration, Page 02 | 136 |
| Table 6.15 | System Configuration, Page 03 | 136 |
| Table 6.16 | System Configuration, Page 04 | 136 |
| Table 6.17 | System Configuration, Page 05 | 136 |
| Table 6.18 | Add User | 138 |
| Table 6.19 | User I/O | 143 |
| Table 6.20 | Authority Check | 147 |
| Table 6.21 | Actuator Settings | 148 |
| Table 6.22 | Weld History | 149 |
| Table 6.23 | Sample Output for Control Level t with an ae actuator | 154 |
| Table 6.24 | Sample Output for Control Level ea, or d with an ae actuator | 154 |
| Table 6.25 | Sample Output for Control Level d with an aed actuator | 154 |
| Table 6.26 | External test data string output | 154 |
| Table 6.27 | Code Output | 155 |
| Table 6.28 | System Information | 161 |
| Table 6.29 | Diagnostics | 164 |
| Table 6.30 | Weld History | 171 |
| Table 6.31 | Preset Naming Convention | 173 |
| Table 6.32 | Alarm Log | 183 |
| Table 6.33 | Event History | 184 |

Chapter 7: Actuator Operation

| | | |
|-----------|------------------------|-----|
| Table 7.1 | Mechanical Stop | 194 |
| Table 7.2 | Operating the Actuator | 195 |

Chapter 8: Maintenance

| | | |
|------------|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 8.1 | Routine Component Replacement | 203 |
| Table 8.2 | Accessories List for 2000Xc Actuator | 204 |
| Table 8.3 | Replacement Parts List for 2000Xc Power Supply | 207 |
| Table 8.4 | 2000Xc Series System Cables (External) | 208 |
| Table 8.5 | Suggested Spares | 208 |
| Table 8.6 | Voltage Test Points | 214 |
| Table 8.7 | 2000Xc Modules | 217 |
| Table 8.8 | Removing the Touchscreen Display | 219 |
| Table 8.9 | Removing the Power Supply Module | 220 |
| Table 8.10 | Removing the DC Power Supply | 221 |
| Table 8.11 | Battery for the Real Time Clock RAM | 222 |
| Table 8.12 | Removing the SBC PC Board | 223 |
| Table 8.13 | Reinstalling the SBC Board | 224 |
| Table 8.14 | Removing the Line Board | 225 |
| Table 8.15 | Removing and Replacing the Line Fuses | 227 |
| Table 8.16 | Removing a Cooling Fan | 228 |

Appendix A: FAQ

Appendix B: Alarms

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table B.1 | Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 235 |
| Table B.2 | Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 237 |
| Table B.3 | No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 241 |
| Table B.4 | Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 242 |

| | | |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Table B.5 | Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 247 |
| Table B.6 | Overload Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 263 |
| Table B.7 | Note Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action | 265 |

Appendix C: Events

| | | |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----|
| Table C.1 | Event Records | 268 |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----|

Appendix D: Web Services

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------------|-----|
| Table D.1 | Error Codes | 285 |
| Table D.2 | Parameter IDs | 288 |
| Table D.3 | Weld History IDs | 296 |
| Table D.4 | Event History IDs | 297 |
| Table D.5 | Alarm Log IDs | 297 |
| Table D.6 | User ID Table IDS | 298 |
| Table D.7 | User Level IDs | 298 |
| Table D.8 | Operator Authority IDs | 298 |

Appendix E: Manual Revisions

| | | |
|-----------|----------------------------|-----|
| Table E.1 | Manuals revision | 302 |
|-----------|----------------------------|-----|

Chapter 1: Safety and Support





| | | |
|------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1.1 | Safety Requirements and Warnings | 2 |
| 1.2 | General Precautions | 6 |
| 1.3 | Warranty | 9 |
| 1.4 | How to Contact Branson | 10 |
| 1.5 | Returning Equipment for Repair | 11 |
| 1.6 | Obtaining Replacement Parts | 14 |





1.1 Safety Requirements and Warnings

This chapter contains an explanation of the different Safety Notice symbols and icons found both in this manual and on the product itself and provides additional safety information for ultrasonic welding. This chapter also describes how to contact Branson for assistance.

1.1.1 Symbols Found in this Manual

These symbols used throughout this manual warrant special attention:

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WARNING | Indicates a possible danger |
|  | If these risks are not avoided, death or severe injury might result. |
| WARNING | High Voltage Hazard |
|  | High voltage. Turn power off before servicing. |
| WARNING | Corrosive Material Hazard |
|  | Corrosive material. Avoid contact with eyes and skin. Wear proper protection. |
| CAUTION | Indicates a possible danger |
|  | If these risks are not avoided, slight or minor injury might result. |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CAUTION | Loud Noise Hazard |
|  | <p>Loud noise hazard. Ear protection must be worn.</p> |
| CAUTION | Heavy Object |
|  | <p>Heavy object. To avoid muscle strain or back injury, use lifting aids and proper lifting techniques.</p> |
| CAUTION | |
|  | <p>Wear Safety glasses to protect your eyes from debris and dust.</p> |
| NOTICE | Indicates a possible damaging situation |
|  | <p>If this situation is not avoided, the system or something in its vicinity might get damaged.</p> <p>Application types and other important or useful information are emphasized.</p> |

1.1.2 Symbols Found on the Product

Familiar graphic warning symbols are used to alert the user to items of concern or hazard. The following warning symbols appear on the 2000Xc actuator and power supply.

Figure 1.1 Safety label on the rear of the 2000Xc Power Supply



Figure 1.2 Caution label on the 2000Xc Actuator for the factory air supply



Figure 1.3 Safety label shown on the rear of the 2000Xc Actuator



Figure 1.4 Connector label on the 2000Xc Actuator

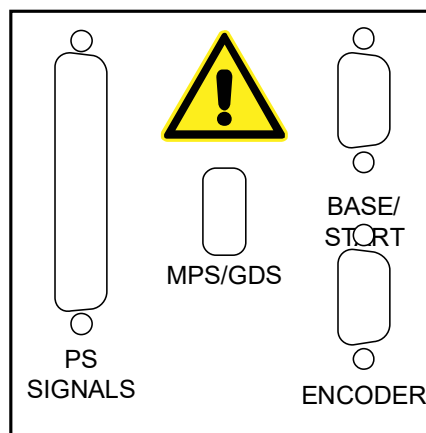


Figure 1.5 Safety Label on front of the 2000Xc Actuator



Table 1.1 Safety label on the front of the actuator




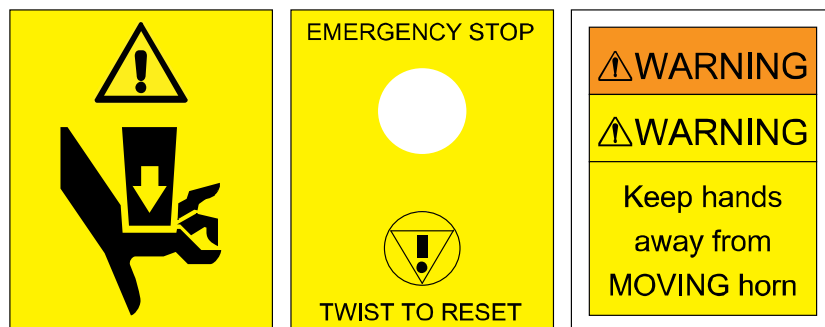
| Icon | Description |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <p>High Voltage Hazard</p>  | Disconnect power before servicing. |
| <p>Flying Debris and Loud Noise Hazards</p>  | Eye and ear protection must be worn. |
| <p>Burn Hazard</p>  | Hot surfaces. Do not touch the tooling. |


Figure 1.6 Safety Label in the Actuator





1.2 General Precautions

Take the following precautions before servicing the power supply:

- To prevent the possibility of an electrical shock, always plug the power supply into a grounded power source
- To prevent the possibility of an electrical shock, ground the power supply by securing an 8 gauge grounded conductor to the ground screw located next to the air outlet
- Power supplies produce high voltage. Before working on the power supply assembly, do the following:
Turn off the power supply
Unplug main power
Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitors to discharge
- High voltage is present in the power supply. Do not operate with the cover removed
- High line voltages exist in the ultrasonic power supply assembly. Common points are tied to circuit reference, not chassis ground. Therefore, use only non-grounded, battery-powered multimeters when testing the power supply assembly. Using other types of test equipment can present a shock hazard
- Keep hands from under the horn. Down force (pressure) and ultrasonic vibrations can cause injury
- Do not cycle the welding system if either the RF cable or converter is disconnected
- When using larger horns, avoid situations where fingers could be pinched between the horn and the fixture
- Ensure power supply installation is performed by qualified personnel and in accordance with local standards and regulations
- In normal operation, bearing seals will retain an adequate amount of grease for safe bearing operation. Bearing can leak but contains enough grease for the life of the bearing. Removing and running without grease will void the warranty. For more information contact product support


| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Sound level and frequency of the noise emitted during the ultrasonic assembly process may depend upon a. type of application, b. size, shape and composition of the material being assembled, c. shape and material of the holding fixture, d. welder setup parameters and e. tool design.</p> <p>Some parts vibrate at an audible frequency during the process. Some or all of these factors may result in an uncomfortable noise being emitted during the process.</p> <p>In such cases operators may need to be provided with personal protective equipment. See 29 CFR (Code of Federal Regulations) 1910.95 Occupational Noise Exposure.</p> |

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Wear Safety glasses to protect your eyes from debris and dust.</p> |


| CAUTION | Corrosive Material Hazard |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>First aid measures (in case of electrolyte leakage from the battery)</p> <p>Eye Contact: Flush the eyes with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes immediately, without rubbing. Get immediate medical treatment. If appropriate procedures are not taken, this may cause eye injury.</p> <p>Skin Contact: Wash the affected area under tepid running water using a mild soap. If appropriate procedures are not taken, this may cause sores on the skin. Get medical attention if irritation develops or persists.</p> <p>Inhalation: Remove to fresh air immediately. Get medical treatment immediately.</p> |

1.2.1 Intended Use of the System

The 2000Xc Power Supply and components are designed to be used as part of an ultrasonic welding system. These are designed for a wide variety of welding or processing applications.


| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If the equipment is used in a manner not specified by Branson, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired. Indoor use only.</p> |

Branson Ultrasonics Corporation designs and manufactures machines giving the first priority to safety precautions, to allow customers to use the machines safely and effectively. Only trained operators should run the equipment. Untrained operators can misuse the equipment or ignore safety instructions that can result in personal injury or equipment damage. It is most essential that all operators pay attention to safety instructions when operating the equipment.

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>This equipment is designed to be operated by one (1) person only.</p> |

1.2.2 Emissions

Because of the various types of toxic or injurious gases that may be liberated during the welding based on the material being processed, sufficient ventilation should be provided to prevent a concentration of these gases in excess of 0.1 ppm. Check with your materials suppliers for recommended protection when processing their materials.

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Processing of many materials, such as PVC, can be hazardous to an operator's health and could cause corrosion/damage to the equipment. Use proper ventilation and take protective measures. |

1.2.3 Setting up the Workplace

Measures for setting up a workplace for safe operation of the ultrasonic welder are outlined in [Chapter 5: Installation and Setup](#).

1.2.4 Regulatory Compliance

This product meets electrical safety requirements and EMC (Electromagnetic Compliance) requirements for North America, Great Britain and the European Union.

1.3 Warranty

For warranty information please reference the warranty section of Terms and Conditions found at: www.emerson.com/branson-terms-conditions.

1.4 How to Contact Branson

Branson is here to help you. We appreciate your business and are interested in helping you successfully use our products. To contact Branson for help, use the following telephone numbers, or contact the field office nearest you (business hours from 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. Central and Eastern Time Zones):

- **North American Headquarters (all Departments):** (203) 796-0400
- **Parts Store (direct number):** (877) 330-0406
- **Repair department:** (877)-330-0405
- **For emergency after-hours service (5 p.m. – 8 a.m. EST):** (203) 796-0500 (US phone numbers only)

Tell the operator which product you have and which person or department you need ([Table 1.2](#)). If after hours, please leave a voice message with your name and return telephone number.

1.4.1 Before Calling Branson for Assistance


This manual provides information for troubleshooting and resolving problems that could occur with the equipment (see [Chapter 8: Maintenance](#)). If you still require assistance, Branson Product Support is here to help you. To help identify the problem, use the following questionnaire which lists the common questions you will be asked when you contact the Product Support department.

Before calling, determine the following information:

1. Your company name and location.
2. Your return telephone number.
3. Have your manual with you. If troubleshooting a problem, refer to [Chapter 8: Maintenance](#).
4. Know your equipment model and serial numbers (found on a gray data label on the units). Information about the horn (part number, gain, etc.) or other tooling may be etched into the tooling. Software- or firmware-based systems may provide a BOS or software version number, which may be required.
5. What tooling (horn) and booster are being used?
6. What are the setup parameters and mode?
7. Is your equipment in an automated system? If so, what is supplying the “start” signal?
8. Describe the problem; provide as much detail as possible. For example, is the problem intermittent? How often does it occur? How long before it occurs if you are just powering up? If an error is occurring, which error (give error number or name)?
9. List the steps you have already taken.
10. What is your application, including the materials being processed?
11. Have a list of service or spare parts you have on hand (tips, horns, etc.)
12. Notes:

1.5 Returning Equipment for Repair

Before sending equipment for repair, provide as much information with the equipment to help determine the problem with the system. Use the following page to record necessary information.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>To return equipment to Branson, you must first obtain an RGA number from a Branson representative, or the shipment may be delayed or refused.</p> |

If you are returning equipment to Branson for repair, you must first call the Repair department to obtain a **Returned Goods Authorization (RGA)** number. (If you request it, the repair department will fax a Returned Goods Authorization form to fill out and return with your equipment).

Branson Repair Department, C/O Zuniga Logistics, LTD

12013 Sara Road, Killam Industrial Park

Laredo, Texas 78045 U.S.A.

Direct telephone number: (877) 330-0405

Fax number: (877) 330-0404

- Provide as much information as possible that will help identify the need for repair
- Carefully pack the equipment in original packing cartons
- Clearly label all shipping cartons with the RGA number on the outside of cartons as well as on your packing slip, along with the reason for return
- Return general repairs by any convenient method. Send priority repairs by air freight
- You must prepay the transportation charges FOB Laredo, Texas, U.S.A.

1.5.1 Get an RGA Number

RGA#

If you are returning equipment to Branson, please call the Repair Department to obtain a Returned Goods Authorization (RGA) number. (At your request, the Repair Department will fax an RGA form to fill out and return with the equipment).

1.5.2 Record Information About the Problem

Before sending equipment for repair, record the following information and send a copy of it with the equipment. This will greatly increase Branson's ability to address the problem.

1. Describe the problem; provide as much detail as possible. For example, is the problem intermittent? How often does it occur? How long before it occurs after powering up?

2. Is your equipment in an automated system?

3. If the problem is with an external signal, which signal?

4. If known, include plug/pin # (e.g., P29, pin #3) for that signal:

5. What are the Weld Parameters?

6. What is your application? (Type of weld, plastic material, etc.):

7. Name and phone number of the person most familiar with the problem:

Contact the Branson office prior to shipping the equipment.

For equipment not covered by warranty, to avoid delay, include a Purchase Order.

Send a copy of this page with the equipment being returned for repair.

1.5.3 Departments to Contact

Call your local Branson Representative, or contact Branson by calling and asking for the appropriate department, as indicated in [Table 1.2](#) below.

Table 1.2 Branson Contacts

| What you need help with or information about | Whom to Call | At this Phone Number... |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Information about new welding systems or components. | Your local Branson Rep or Branson Customer Service. | 203-796-0400 Ext 384 |
| Application and setup questions on the welding system. | Welding Applications Lab. | 203-796-0400 Ext 368 |
| Application assistance on the horns and tooling. | ATG Lab. | 203-796-0400 Ext 495 |
| Technical questions about the welding system. | Welding Product Support. | 203-796-0400 Ext 355, 551 |
| Technical questions about horns and tooling. | ATG Lab. | 203-796-0400 Ext 495 |
| Ordering new parts. | Parts Store. | 877-330-0406 |
| RGA's, request for repair, status of a repair. | Welding Repair Department. | 877-330-0405 |
| System automation/hookup information. | Product Support. | 203-796-0400 Ext 355, 551 |

My Local Branson Representative's name is:

I can reach this representative at:

1.5.4 Pack and Ship the Equipment

- Carefully pack the system in original packing material to avoid shipping damage. Plainly show the RGA number on the outside of cartons as well as inside the carton along with the reason for return. Make a list of all components packed in the box. KEEP YOUR MANUAL.
- Return general repairs by any convenient method. Send priority repairs by air freight. Prepay the transportation charges FOB the repair site

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Items that are sent Freight Collect will be refused. |

1.6 Obtaining Replacement Parts

You can reach Branson Parts Store at the following telephone numbers:

Branson Part Store

Direct telephone number: 877-330-0406

Fax number: 877-330-0404

Many parts can be shipped the same day if ordered before 2:30 p.m., Eastern time.

A parts list is found in [Chapter 8: Maintenance](#) of this manual, listing descriptions and EDP part numbers. If you need replacement parts, coordinate the following with your purchasing agent:

- Purchase order number
- Ship to information
- Bill to information
- Shipping instructions (air freight, truck, etc.)
- Any special instructions (for example, "Hold at the airport and call"). Be sure to give a name and phone number
- Contact name information

Chapter 2: Introduction

| | | |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 2.1 | Models Covered | 16 |
| 2.2 | Compatibility with Branson Products | 20 |
| 2.3 | Features of the System | 21 |
| 2.4 | Power Supply Front Panel Controls | 24 |
| 2.5 | Actuator Controls and Indicators. | 25 |
| 2.6 | 21 CFR Part 11 Capability | 26 |
| 2.7 | Glossary | 27 |

2.1 Models Covered

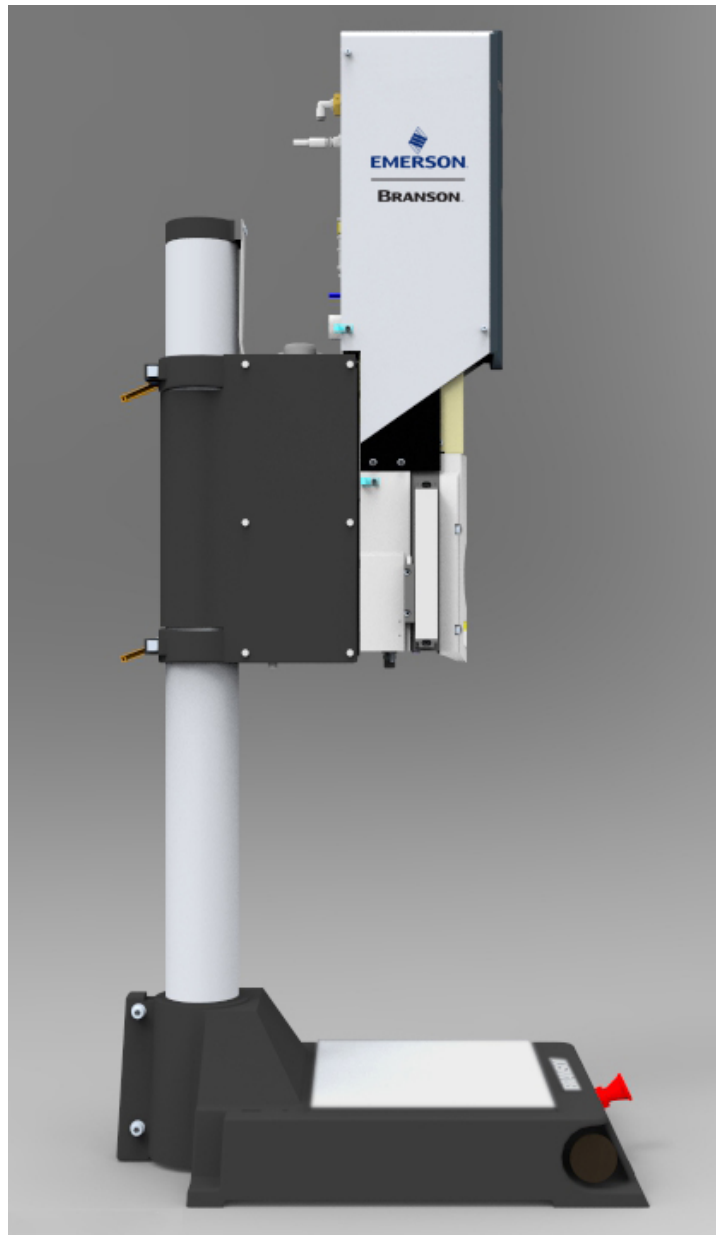
This manual provides detailed instructions for installation, setup, operation, and maintenance of the 2000Xc Power Supply.

The 2000Xc Actuator may be found in one of two configurations:

- An actuator on a column support, column and ergonomic base, also called a stand on base (as seen on [Figure 2.1](#))
- An actuator alone (not installed on a column support, and so on). These are often used in custom systems that provide a means of positioning the actuator

The figure below shows a Branson 2000Xc Actuator mounted on a column support which, in turn is mounted on a column, and is supported by the ergonomic base.

Figure 2.1 Left Side View of the 2000Xc Actuator



2.1.1 Overview of the Welding system

The welding system consists of a power supply, an actuator, and a converter-booster-horn stack. The system can perform a variety of ultrasonic welding operations, including: inserting, staking, spot welding, swaging, degating, and continuous operations. It is designed for use in automated, semi-automated, and/or manual production systems.

2.1.2 Principle of Operation

Thermoplastic parts are welded ultrasonically by applying high-frequency vibrations to the parts being assembled. The vibrations, through surface and intermolecular friction, produce a sharp rise in temperature at the welding interface.

When the temperature is high enough to melt the plastic, there is a flow of material between the parts. When the vibrations stop, the material solidifies under pressure and a weld results.

Most plastics welders operate at a frequency above the range of human hearing (18 kHz) and are thus called ultrasonic.

2.1.3 The 2000Xc Power Supply

The power supply consists of an ultrasonic power supply module and a system controller. The ultrasonic power supply module converts conventional 50/60 Hz line current to 20 kHz, 30 kHz or 40 kHz electrical energy. The system controller monitors and controls the welding system.

The power supply is configured with a digital UPS. The digital supply has a library of up to 1000 locked presets which are accessible for various process parameter modifications that are unique to the power supply itself. These modifications can be named to reflect specific applications, and are loaded into memory prior to shipment from the Branson factory. The parameters of the individual presets can be modified by a Branson representative. Initially, one preset is set to factory default. They are accessed via an RS-232c link to the system controller.

The power supply provides the following features:

- **AutoTune with Memory (AT/M):** Allows the power supply to track and store the horn frequency of the last weld
- **Auto Seek:** Tracks and starts the horn on the correct frequency. It does this by running the horn at a low-level amplitude (5%) to find and lock on to the horn operating frequency
- **Line Regulation:** Maintains converter amplitude by regulating for variances in the line voltages
- **S-Beam Load Cell:** Provides an indication of the force on a part during a weld. This indication can be used to determine when to trigger ultrasonics and also to produce a force/distance graph of the operating cycle
- **Load Regulation:** Maintains converter amplitude over the full range of rated power
- **System Protection:** Protects the power supply by providing five levels of protection
 - Voltage
 - Current
 - Phase
 - Temperature
 - Power
- **Frequency Offset:** Provides for applying an external frequency offset to the operating frequency

2.1.4 The 2000Xc Actuator

The 2000Xc Actuator is a compact, rigid unit designed for use in manual, semi-automated, and automated ultrasonic welding systems. The actuator can be mounted directly on an I-beam (or similar machine frame), or it can be mounted on a column and base with start switches and used in a manual or benchtop system. The actuator is designed to be operated in an upright position, but is capable of running horizontally or inverted. If you are mounting your equipment in an inverted position, contact Branson for further recommendations. (See [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#)).

The 2000Xc Actuator requires a 2000Xc Power Supply for power and control of the actuator's operation and to provide ultrasonic power to the converter in the actuator.

The 2000Xc Actuator is designed with full, built-in pneumatic controls, and mechanical controls. Operation of the 2000Xc Power Supply is controlled by inputs to the 2000Xc Power Supply.

S-Beam Load Cell and Dynamic Follow-Through

Many welding applications require force to be built up on the part before ultrasonic energy is activated. To achieve this, the actuator contains an S-Beam load cell, located between the air cylinder and the converter, which initiates (triggers) ultrasonics after a preset force is applied to the part. Dynamic follow-through maintains a consistent force on the part during the weld collapse. This system helps provide uniform weld quality.

The dynamic triggering and follow-through process operates as follows: upon activation of the operating cycle, the solenoid valve delivers regulated air to the upper portion of the cylinder, and exhausts air through the Downspeed control from the bottom of the cylinder, causing the horn to advance and contact the workpiece. When the load cell measurement of the force on the part indicates part contact, and the desired trigger force is reached, a signal is sent to the power supply, which then starts the weld cycle. At this time, the actuator locks into a cycle, timing begins, and the palm buttons can be released. As melting of the plastic occurs, the load cell dynamic follow through maintains consistent force on the part, ensuring smooth, efficient transmission of ultrasonic energy into the part.

The Carriage and Slide System

The 2000Xc Actuator's carriage is driven by a double-acting air cylinder. It is mounted on a linear ball-bearing slide. The slide system is based on eight sets of preloaded, permanently lubricated bearings and provides consistent, precise alignment of the horn, smooth linear motion, and long-term reliability.

Encoder

The encoder measures the distance the horn has traveled. Depending on the power supply settings, it can:

- Allow for distance welding in absolute and collapse modes
- Detect improper setup controls
- Monitor the distance data of the weld

The Pneumatic System

The pneumatic system included on the 2000Xc Power Supply model is contained within the actuator's sheet-metal enclosure and consists of solenoid valves, an air cylinder, and a pressure regulator. The horn's rate of descent is adjusted by the Downspeed control in the power supply control panel. The rate of return is fixed. For information on setting the Downspeed control, see [2.5 Actuator Controls and Indicators](#).

2.1.5 The Ultrasonic Stack

Converter

The converter is mounted in the actuator as part of the ultrasonic stack. The ultrasonic electrical energy from the power supply is applied to the converter (sometimes called the transducer). This transforms the high frequency electrical oscillations into mechanical vibrations at the same frequency as the electrical oscillations. The heart of the converter are piezoelectric ceramic elements. When subjected to an alternating voltage, these elements alternately expand and contract, resulting in better than 90% conversion of electrical to mechanical energy.

Booster

Success in ultrasonic assembly depends on the right amplitude of movement at the horn face. Amplitude is a function of horn shape, which is largely determined by the size and form of the parts to be assembled. The booster can be used as a mechanical transformer to increase or decrease the amplitude of vibrations applied to the parts through the horn.

The booster is a resonant half-wave section of aluminum or titanium. It is mounted between the converter and the horn, as part of the ultrasonic stack. It also provides a clamping point for rigid stack mounting.

Boosters are designed to resonate at the same frequency as the converter with which they are used. Boosters are usually mounted at a nodal (minimum vibration) point of axial motion. This minimizes the loss of energy and prevents vibration from being transmitted into the actuator.

Horn

The horn is selected or designed for a specific application. Each horn is tuned typically as a half-wave section that applies the necessary force and vibration uniformly to the parts to be assembled. It transfers ultrasonic vibrations from the converter to the workpiece. The horn is mounted to the booster as part of the ultrasonic stack.

Depending on their profile, horns are referred to as stepped, conical, exponential, bar, or catenoidal. The shape of the horn determines the amplitude at the face of the horn. Depending on the application, horns can be made from titanium alloys, aluminum, or steel. Titanium alloys are the best materials for horn fabrication due to their high level of strength and low loss. Aluminum horns are usually chrome- or nickel-plated or hard-coated to reduce wear. Steel horns are for low amplitude requiring hardness, such as ultrasonic insertion applications.

2.2 Compatibility with Branson Products

The 2000Xc Power Supply is designed to be used with the converters listed in the following table:

Table 2.1 2000Xc Power Supply Compatibility with Branson Converters

| Model | Converter |
|---------------|-----------|
| 20 kHz/1250 W | CJ20 |
| 20 kHz/2500 W | |
| 20 kHz/4000 W | |
| 30 kHz/750 W | CJ30 |
| 30 kHz/1500 W | |
| 40 kHz/400 W | 4TJ |
| 40 kHz/800 W | |

2.3 Features of the System

Listed below are many features of the Branson 2000Xc ultrasonic welding system.

- **1 Millisecond Control and Sampling Rate:** This feature provides sampling and control of the weld process 1000 times each second
- **1000 Presets:** User-configurable setups that can be preset allowing you to simply recall a weld setup to start production
- **19" Rack Mount Enclosure:** Compatible with industry standard 19" rack enclosure systems
- **Adjust While Running:** The 2000Xc Power Supply allows you to modify the weld parameters while the welder is running
- **Afterburst:** This feature allows you to set the system weld controls to turn the ultrasonics on after the weld and hold steps to release parts from the horn
- **Alarms, Process:** These are set values used for part quality monitoring
- **Amplitude Stepping:** A process controlled by the power supply. At a specified time, energy, peak power, distance, or by external signal you can change the amplitude during the weld to control the flow of plastic. This feature helps ensure part consistency, higher strength parts and control of flash
- **Automatic Preset Naming:** If you choose not to name your preset, the power supply will give it a name that describes the weld mode and main parameter setting
- **Autotuning:** Ensures that the welder is running at peak efficiency
- **Collapse Limits in the Collapse Mode:** Plus and minus Suspect and Reject limits can be set in the Collapse Mode
- **Control Limits:** With some power supply models, these secondary controls are used in conjunction with the main parameters of the weld. These user-programmed limits provide for adaptive control of the weld process
- **Cycle Aborts:** These are user programmed conditions (missing part and ground detect) at which the cycle is terminated. These can be used as safety limits to save wear and tear on the system and your tooling
- **Cycle Time and Date Stamp:** The power supply provides each cycle with a time and date stamp for production and quality control purposes
- **Digital Amplitude Setting:** This feature allows you to set the exact amplitude necessary for your application, affording increased range and setting repeatability over analog systems
- **Digital Horn Test Diagnostics:** In Test mode of the power supply, you can view the Horn Test results in digital form, using digital readouts and bar graphs on the power supply to give you the best picture of the stack's operation
- **Digital Tuning:** Means to tune the power supply for applications and horns at the extremes of the power supply capture range
- **Digital UPS:** The Digital UPS has programmable (through a digital interface from a system controller) features which allow true autotune and start ramp during set-up. Power supply presets can be customized
- **Downspeed:** Controls the rate of descent and impact on the part
- **Encoder:** Allows the power supply to monitor the distance the horn has travelled, enabling the use of distance functions
- **Energy Compensation:** Extend the weld time up to 50% greater than the weld time setting or to whenever the min. energy is reached or; shut off the weld before the expected (set) weld time if maximum energy value is reached
- **English (USCS)/Metric Units:** This feature allows the welder to be set up in the local units in use
- **Foreign Languages:** Software supports user selectable languages; English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese, Japanese and Korean
- **Frequency Offset:** This process feature allows a user to set a frequency value, for certain specific applications, where the force imparted on the fixture or anvil causes a frequency shift in the Stack's operation. You should only use this feature when advised to do so by Branson

- **Graphs, Auto-Scaling:** When you request a graphical display in Time Mode, the power supply automatically scales the time axis of the graph to give you the most meaningful graph possible
- **Graphs of Power, Amplitude, Velocity, Collapse, Force, Frequency, and Horn Scan for the Power Supply:** The 2000Xc Power Supply supports graphical display of these items. These graphs include markers to show critical points in the weld. Use these graphs to optimize your weld process or diagnose application problems
- **Graphs, User Selectable:** In any mode you can select the scale of the time axis on any graph so that you can zoom in on the start of the weld cycle
- **Horn Down:** Clamp On: When in the horn down mode, the start switches can be released after the part is contacted while the part remains clamped in place. Press Retract Horn button to release. Clamp Off: The horn will retract whenever the start switches are released in the horn down mode
- **Horn Down Display:** During Horn Down, the Absolute Distance, Force, Downspeed, and Pressure are displayed digitally so that you can determine correct values for process limits and cutoffs
- **Horn Down Mode:** A manual procedure used to verify system setup and alignment
- **Horn Scan:** A scan to enhance selection of operating frequency and control parameters
- **Limits, Control:** These are controls that are used in conjunction with the main weld mode. These user programmed limits provide for additional control of the weld process
- **Limits, Reject:** A class of user-definable process alarms that alert you if a part falls into a range that you classified as reject parts
- **Limits, Suspect:** A class of user-definable process alarms that alert you if a part falls into a range that you have determined should be inspected
- **Membrane Keyboard:** For high reliability and immunity from factory dust and oils
- **Parameter Entry through Keypad:** A keypad is provided for direct entry. Plus (+), and Minus (-) keys are provided for adjusting existing values
- **Parameter Range Checking:** If you enter an invalid parameter the power supply shows you the valid range
- **Password Protection:** This feature allows you to secure your setup from unauthorized changes. You can select your own password
- **Presets:** The Digital UPS is capable of storing presets of power supply operating parameters
- **Pressure Sensor:** Allows the power supply to read the system pressure
- **Pretrigger:** This feature allows you to set the system weld controls to turn the ultrasonics on before contact with the part to increase performance
- **Process Alarm Display Showing Actual and Set Values:** When an alarm condition has occurred, you can view the value for the last weld and the suspect and reject settings you programmed into the controls
- **Post Weld Seek:** This system feature provides a short burst of energy at the end of the weld Hold and Afterburst steps to automatically re-tune the power supply, if required
- **Ramp Time:** The starting of the 2000Xc Power Supply and horn is done at the optimum rate to reduce electrical and mechanical stress on the system. This also helps make some tough-to-start applications possible
- **Rapid Traverse:** Allows a high horn travel speed for a portion of the stroke. Once the set distance is reached, travel speed is reduced to the downspeed setting
- **Safety Control System Monitoring:** The Safety Control System within the welder constantly monitors the system's safety related components for correct operation. When this system detects a fault condition, operation is interrupted and the system immediately goes to a safe state. A blinking of the power indicator light is used to signal a safety system alarm
- **S-Beam Load Cell/Dynamic Follow Through:** The load cell allows the ultrasonics to be triggered at a designated force input into the power supply
- **Seek:** Ensures operation at resonance; minimizes tuning errors; and operates the stack at low amplitude (approximately 5%), then provides a means of sensing and storing the resonant operating frequency value

- **Setup Checking:** If you create a setup with conflicts the power supply notifies you of the specific conflict
- **System Information Screen:** This is a screen that will give you information about your welding system (e.g., cylinder size, stroke length, number of cycles). Refer to this screen when contacting Branson for service and support
- **Test Diagnostics:** In Test mode you can view the ultrasonic system results using digital readouts and bar graphs
- **Timed Seek:** When turned ON, will do a Seek once every minute to update horn resonant frequency to memory. This is especially useful when the welding process affects the actual temperature of the horn, causing a resonant frequency shift
- **True Wattmeter:** The controls on the power supply include a true wattmeter for accurate measurement of power and energy
- **User-Nameable Presets:** You can refer to each preset by name or part number making identification of your presets simple
- **View Weld Results:** From the Run Screen you can view any of the information available from the last completed cycle
- **Weld Modes:** Time, Energy, Peak Power, Absolute, Collapse, and Ground Detect. The 2000Xc Power Supply offers multiple weld modes so that you can choose the mode of control that best meets your specific application need
- **Weld Parameter Entry through Digital Keypad:** User Setup is direct and easy, by selecting the menu parameter by name and using the keypad to enter the precise value. The controls also support entry by incrementing existing values

2.4 Power Supply Front Panel Controls

Figure 2.2 2000Xc Power Supply Front Panel Display after Power-Up

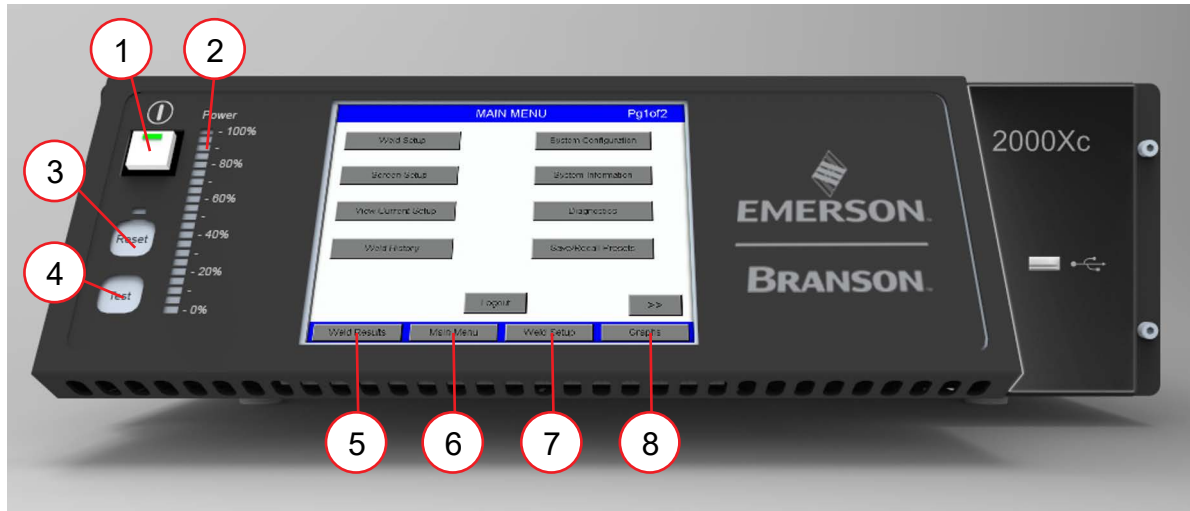



Table 2.2 2000Xc Power Supply Front Panel Display after Power-Up


| Item | Name | Function |
|------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Power Button | Press to turn the system On and Off. When you depress the button, it lights to indicate power is On. |
| 2 | Power Bar Graph | Indicates the percentage of rated power delivered either during the last weld cycle or when Test is running. The indicator's scale can be increased for low-power settings. |
| 3 | Reset Button | Press to clear alarms. Reset only functions on the Run screen. |
| 4 | Test Button | Press to display a menu you can use to test the ultrasonic power supply, horn, booster, and converter. |
| 5 | Weld Results | Press to view 4 preselected parameters for the last 7 weld cycles. |
| 6 | Main Menu | Press to return to the Main Menu. |
| 7 | Weld Setup | Press to go to the Setup menu. |
| 8 | Graphs | Press to select to view graphs of Power, Amplitude, Velocity, Frequency, Distance, Auto Scale, or X Scale. |

2.5 Actuator Controls and Indicators

The front panel controls on the 2000Xc Actuator are listed below.

- **Indicator Light:** Indicates that the actuator is connected to the power supply and that the power supply's main power is on. A blinking of the indicator light is used to signal a safety system alarm
- **Pressure Regulator:** Adjust the amount of air pressure applied to the cylinder; range of 10-100 psig (35-700 kPa)
- **Downspeed Control:** Downspeed is controlled through the power supply menu. Controls the rate of descent on the part to be welded
- **Carriage Door:** Provides access to the converter-booster-horn stack; secured by four captive hex screws. Use a M5 T-handle wrench to tighten the cap screws for the 2000Xc Actuator
- **Mechanical Stop:** Limits the stroke length to prevent the horn from contacting the fixture when no workpiece is in place; adjustment is approximately 0.04 in. (1 mm) per rotation; a locking ring keeps the setting from vibrating loose. Turning the knob clockwise increases the stroke length. There is an indicator on the side to provide a relative distance

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The mechanical stop is not intended for welding by distance. |

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Turning the mechanical stop too far can cause it to come apart. |

2.6 21 CFR Part 11 Capability

The Branson 2000Xc welding system is capable of helping the user meet FDA's 21 CFR Part 11 regulations. The 2000Xc system should be set to Authentication mode to when complying to 21 CFR Part 11 requirements. The intended use is for Subpart B-Closed Systems- Section 10, since the 2000Xc produces and stores data.

The data generated from the 2000Xc are in readable format and can be copied in a PDF format to a USB flash drive or downloaded from the Ethernet port using webservices. The data in the 2000Xc is buffered and saved in the system but is limited in storage capacity. To open up storage capacity for new data, the current data can be copied to a USB flash drive or downloaded with webservices. After copying or downloading the data can be deleted.

User authorized access and authority check security is set in the 2000Xc configuration. Controls can be setup to govern frequency of password change, idle log out time, and ability to disable accounts. User IDs must be unique and industry standards for password complexity are used.

Audit trails are accessible from the event history screen. Changes made to validated weld presets, system configuration, and user ID authority table are recorded in the event history along with the logged in user, time, date, and comments for the changes made.

2.7 Glossary

The following terminology may be encountered when using or operating a 2000Xc ultrasonic welding system.

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AB Amplitude | The amplitude at the horn face during the afterburst step. |
| AB Delay | Time delay between the end of the hold and the start of the afterburst. |
| AB Time | The duration of the afterburst. |
| Absolute Cutoff | Ends the ultrasonic portion of the cycle when the set absolute distance is reached. |
| Absolute Distance | The distance the horn has traveled from home (ULS deactivation). |
| Absolute Mode | A mode of operation in which the ultrasonic portion of the cycle is terminated when a user-specified distance from home has been reached. |
| Absolute Position | The position of the actuator after clearing the Upper Limit Switch. |
| Accept-as-is | A disposition permitted for a nonconforming item when it can be established that the item is satisfactory for its intended use without violating safety or functional requirements. |
| Act Clr Output | Actuator Clear output signal, sent upon the welder reaching a safe position of the actuator return stroke. |
| Actual | A reported value that occurred during the weld cycle. The converse is the set parameter that was requested during the setup. |
| Actuator | The unit that houses the converter, booster, and horn assembly in a rigid mounting allowing it to move up and down either mechanically or pneumatically to apply a predetermined pressure on the workpiece. |
| Afterburst | Ultrasonic energy applied after the hold step. Used to break away sticking parts from the tooling. |
| Alarm Beeper | An audible signal that sounds when a general alarm has occurred. |
| Alarm Log | A record of alarms that have occurred to the welder. Records time, date, alarm number, and cycle number. |
| Amp A | The amplitude applied to the part from the start of the weld to the step change. |
| Amp B | The amplitude applied to the part from the step change to the end of the weld. |
| Amp Control | The ability to set amplitude digitally or by an external control. |
| Amplitude | The peak-to-peak movement at the horn face. Always expressed as a percentage of the maximum. |
| Amplitude Graph | A graph of amplitude percentage plotted against time. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Amplitude Step | A change in amplitude during the ultrasonic portion of the cycle. |
| Authority Check | Enables Authority level functions and menus. |
| Auto Scale Graph | When turned on, the graph will be auto scaled, when off allows X Scale to set scale. |
| Automatic | A pretrigger condition indicating that pretrigger engages when the actuator leaves the upper limit switch. |
| Automation | Used in automation when an operator log in is not required. When in automation, weld setup and configuration menus are disabled. |
| Basic/Expert | Expert (default) allows access to all functions and menus of the welder. Basic limits the configuration and weld setup menus to a minimum number. |
| Batch Setup | Controls how many parts will be welded in a batch. |
| Beep | An audible signal produced by the Branson control board. Used to alert the operator to an unexpected condition or that trigger has been reached. |
| Booster | A one-half wavelength long resonant metal section mounted between the converter and horn, usually having a change in cross-sectional area between the input and output surfaces. Mechanically alters the amplitude of vibration at the driving surface of the converter. |
| Cal Actuator | Calibrate Actuator. Menus to guide the user through actuator calibration; distance can be verified. |
| Cal Sensor | The menu title for accessing the calibration and verification of pressure and force. |
| Clamping Force | The pressure exerted by the horn on the workpiece. |
| Cold Start | A condition that restores a setup to its default values. Note: Use Carefully. |
| Collapse Distance | The distance the horn has traveled from the trigger point of ultrasonics. |
| Collapse Mode | A mode in which the ultrasonics portion of the cycle is terminated when a user-specified distance from the trigger point has been reached. |
| Components Verify | Verification, before running a weld, that the system configuration's system components and the weld preset's system components match. |
| Control Limits | Additional parameters that determine the end of the ultrasonic portion of the cycle and the move to the hold state. |
| Converter | The device that converts electrical energy into mechanical vibrations at a high frequency (an ultrasonic rate). The converter is a central component of the welding system and is mounted in the actuator. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Counters | A record of the number of cycles run by category, for example, alarms, good parts, and so on. |
| Cycle Aborts | Settings that end the cycle immediately. |
| Digital Filter | A smoothing technique used to provide more meaningful data. |
| Digital Frequency | A specific starting frequency for a horn. Set to Default (recommended) for factory default starting frequency. |
| Downspeed | The user-definable speed of descent (percentage of maximum speed) during the down stroke of the actuator. |
| Downspeed Tuning | Run actuator test cycles for measuring speed and allowing fine adjustments to the speed setting. |
| Energy Braking | Allows the power supply time to reduce the amplitude before the sonics are shut off. Any overloads that occur will be ignored in this state. They will be handled in the hold state. |
| Energy Compensation | Extend the weld time up to 50% greater than the weld time setting or whenever the minimum energy is reached, or shut off the weld before the expected (set) weld time if the maximum energy value is reached. |
| Energy Mode | A mode of operation in which ultrasonics are terminated at a user-specified energy value. |
| Event History | A record of changes made to the welder configuration and weld setup. Records time, date, user ID and comments made for changes. Used for audit purposes. |
| Executive | Highest authority level allowed to the power supply. The Executive has access to all configuration and weld setup features. Only the Executive can create or modify the User ID Setup. Multiple Executive level users can be created in the User ID table. The User ID table must contain at least one Executive user. |
| External Amplitude Control | Enables you to access real-time amplitude control directly. |
| External Frequency Control | Enables you to access real-time frequency control directly. |
| External U/S Delay | If External Trigger Delay is enabled, weld state machine shall wait for external trigger delay input to become active in less than 30 seconds. When the time expires and input is still inactive, alarm will be recorded and cycle aborted. |
| Extra Cooling | When On, allows cooling air to start when upper limit switch is triggered and remains on throughout the cycle. When Off, air is applied at ultrasonics application. |
| F Actual | Actual Frequency. The operating frequency of the ultrasonic stack, as measured during a cycle. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F Memory | Frequency as stored in the power supply memory. The intended operating frequency value for an ultrasonic stack, stored in the memory of the power supply. |
| Force | Weld Force. The mechanical force applied to the part during the cycle. |
| Force Act | Actual Force. The measured mechanical force determined from the results of a weld cycle. |
| Force Graph | Displays force in pounds as a function of weld time. |
| Force/Col Graph | Dual display of collapse distance in inches and force in pounds as a function of time. |
| Freq Chg | Frequency Change. (Frequency at Start versus Frequency at End). |
| Freq End | The frequency at the end of the ultrasonic portion of the welding cycle (when ultrasonics are terminated). |
| Freq Max | Maximum Frequency. Highest frequency reached during weld cycle. |
| Freq Min | Minimum Frequency. Lowest frequency reached during weld cycle. |
| Freq Start | Frequency at Start. Frequency at the time ultrasonics was turned on. |
| Frequency | The operating frequency of the ultrasonic stack. The frequency stored is measured at the end of the ultrasonic portion of the cycle (when ultrasonics are terminated). |
| Frequency Graph | Displays operating frequency as a function of time. |
| Frequency Offset | An offset factor applied to the ultrasonic frequency stored in the power supply. |
| General Alarm | An alarm that occurs due to system fault and/or tripping a limit. |
| Gnd Det. Mode | Ground Detect Mode, available in all models of 2000Xc Power Supply. In this mode of operation, ultrasonics are terminated after detection of a ground condition between the horn and fixture or anvil. |
| Ground Det. Cutoff | Ground Detect Cutoff. Immediately terminates the weld process, including the hold step, when a ground detect has occurred. |
| Hold Force | The force on the part during the hold portion of the cycle. |
| Hold Pressure | The pressure applied during the hold portion of the cycle. If set to Default, hold pressure equals weld pressure. |
| Hold Time | The duration of the hold step. |
| Horn Clamp | If set to ON, the horn will stay down and hold the part in place in the event of an alarm. A Supervisor can reset it and remove the part. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Horn Down | A mode in which ultrasonics are locked out and the user can advance the actuator for setup and alignment. |
| I/O Connector | Presets 1 through 32 are available. |
| Key | Reserved for special product configuration codes. |
| Linear Encoder | Provides carriage (horn) distance measurement during the actuator cycle. |
| Main Menu | The list of categories of features available in the software, as displayed on the front panel of the power supply. |
| Max Energy | Maximum Energy. The maximum user-specified energy that produces a part without an alarm. Used with energy compensation to turn off the weld in Time mode. |
| Memory Full | Does not allow any welding until memory is cleared. Memory can be cleared by using Copy Now and deleting memory. If set to Continue, the system will write over older memory. |
| Min Energy | Minimum Energy. The minimum user-specified energy that produces a part without an alarm. Used with energy compensation to extend the weld to up to 50% of the weld time in Time mode. |
| Minus Limit | The user-defined lower limit, or lower extreme of an acceptable range for a given parameter. Used with suspect and reject limits. |
| Missing Part | A min/max distance where trigger is expected. Returns the actuator to the home position and displays an alarm indicating that the cycle was aborted because no part was present. |
| Operator | Authority level below Technician. The Operator can run a weld and view system information, weld history, and current setup. The Operator cannot access the weld setup or configuration menu. |
| Operator Authority | Special authority rights granted to operators beyond the basic level of welder operation. The setting for this is global and applies to all operator level users. Multiple Operator level users can be created in the User ID table. |
| P/Col Graph | Dual Display of % power and collapse distance as a function of time. |
| P/Force Graph | Dual display of % power and force as a function of time. |
| Parameter Range | Valid range of parameters accepted for a particular setup. |
| Part-ID Scan | A USB barcode reader or similar device must read and record the part ID before allowing the weld to occur. When set to ON and after a weld cycle, the welder will stay out of ready mode until another part ID is read. If set to OFF, no part ID reading is required before a weld. |
| Password Recovery Kit | PRK. A dongle that plugs into the back of the power supply to disable authority check. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Peak Power | A weld mode in which obtaining a power value (percentage of full power) will cause the ultrasonic energy to terminate. |
| Peak Power Cutoff | A power value that terminates the ultrasonics when peak power is not the primary control mode. |
| Plus Limit | The user-defined upper limit. See Control Limits, Suspect, Reject and Missing Part Limits. |
| Pneumatic Air Prep | This is a panel that mounts the cutoff valve, filter, and slow start valve that are normally located in the actuator. This panel is required for installations where the actuator is not positioned in a vertical plane, or is used without a Branson actuator support. |
| Post Weld Seek | Used to determine the operating frequency of the Stack, after the Hold and/or Afterburst portion of the weld cycle. Ultrasonics are run at a low level (5%) amplitude during this step, and the frequency is stored to memory. |
| Power Graph | A graph of power in percentage of maximum plotted against time. |
| Preset | User-stored parameters constituting a weld setup. Saved in non-volatile memory in the power supply, can be recalled for quick Setup of the system. |
| Preset Barcode Start | The character set for the Preset Barcode Start will indicate a preset is to be recalled. The number following the character indicates which preset number. Example; Preset Barcode Start = P indicates if a barcode reader sees the letter P as the first character of a barcode, it will recall a preset based on the number after P on the barcode. |
| Preset Name | The ability to name a preset in customer-defined terms. |
| Presets, External Selection | Presets can be changed externally using 5 user inputs on the user |
| Pressure Limits | Minimum and Maximum weld pressure limits. |
| Pressure Step | A change in weld pressure during the ultrasonic portion of the cycle. Pressure A must be less or equal to Pressure B. |
| Pretrg @ D | The distance at which pretrigger is turned on. |
| Pretrig Amp | Pretrigger Amplitude. The amplitude at the horn face during pretrigger. |
| Pretrigger | The setting that causes ultrasonics to start before contact with the part (or, before the set Trigger Force has been met). |
| Rapid Traverse/ RAPID TRAV | Allows fast actuator descent to a user-defined point, before the Downspeed value is applied for control during the stroke. |
| Ready Position | State in which the welder is retracted to the home position and ready to receive the start signal, ready to operate. |
| Recall Preset | Allows a user to activate a preset from memory for purposes of operation or modification. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Reject Limits | User-definable limits at which the violating cycle is identified as having produced a bad part. |
| Reset Required | State used with limits indicating that a reset will be required when the limit is exceeded. The reset is accomplished by using the reset key on the front of the power supply, or by external reset at the User I/O. |
| Run Screen | The screen showing weld status, alarms, weld count, and process information. Available using a front-panel button on the power supply. |
| S-Beam Load Cell | Provides force measurement for accurate ultrasonic triggering and graphing of force. |
| Scrub Time | In Ground Detect mode, the amount of time after detection of a ground condition before the termination of ultrasonics, and end of the cycle. |
| Seek | The activation of ultrasonics at a low-level (5%) amplitude, for the purpose of finding the resonant frequency of the Stack. |
| Setup Limits | Minimum and maximum parameter changes allowed for a weld preset. |
| Stack | Converter, Booster, and Horn. |
| Start Frequency | The frequency stored in memory and the starting frequency of the horn. |
| Step @ Col (in) | User-definable collapse distance at which AmpA is changed to AmpB. |
| Step @ E (J) | User-definable energy at which AmpA is changed to AmpB. |
| Step @ Ext Sig | Allows you to step Amplitude based upon an external signal. |
| Step @ Pwr (%) | User-definable power at which AmpA is changed to AmpB. |
| Step @ T (S) | User-definable time at which AmpA is changed to AmpB. |
| Supervisor | Authority level below Executive. The Supervisor has access to all configuration and weld setup features. Multiple Supervisor level users can be created in the User ID table. |
| Suspect Limits | User-definable limits at which the resultant weld in a welding cycle is identified as potentially bad (suspect). |
| SV Interlock | SV Interlock input allows power supply to close an auxiliary door. |
| Sys Components | System Components. Assign names to the power supply, actuator, and stack. Assigned names will become part of the system configuration and weld preset. |
| Technician | Authority level below Supervisor. The supervisor can create and save a weld setup, perform a horn down test, and run diagnostics. The technician cannot validate, lock, or unlock a validated preset. The technician cannot access the configuration menu. Multiple Technician level users can be created in the User ID table. |

Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Test Scale | The magnification of the power bar on the front panel of the power supply, useful for lower-power applications that want a more accurate (but smaller) scale. |
| Time Mode | Terminates the ultrasonics at a user-specified time. |
| Timeout | A time at which the ultrasonic energy terminates if the main control parameter has not been reached. |
| Trig Delay | Trigger Delay. A user-programmable time delay between engagement of the trigger switch and start of ultrasonics and ramping of force to the weld force. |
| Trigger | Trigger force triggers the start of ultrasonics based on a set force level. Trigger distance triggers the start of ultrasonics based on a set travel distance. Trigger distance doesn't consider force when used. |
| Trigger Beeper | An audible signal sounded when the trigger is made. |
| Upper Limit Switch (ULS) | A switch when activated indicates the actuator is in the home position. |
| UPS | Power supply module. |
| USB Copy Now | Allows a PDF copy of weld history, event history, weld setup, and User ID table to be copied to a USB flash drive. The flash drive must be installed for this function to appear. |
| USB Streaming Data Setup | Allows real time recording of weld data and graphs to a USB flash drive. The weld data and graphs can be viewed on a PC using the Branson Weld History Utility Program. |
| User I/O | The User I/O is used to configure actuator inputs and outputs. This menu can only be entered when the welder is not in a weld cycle. |
| User ID Setup | Add and modify users allowed access to the power supply. |
| User-defined Limits | <p>For process resultants, where - is the user-defined lower limit, and + is the user defined upper limit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -/+ S/R Energy: The energy reached during the weld • -/+ Force: The force at the end of the weld • -/+ S/R Freq: The peak frequency reached during a weld • -/+ S/R Power: The peak power as a percentage of the maximum reached during the weld • -/+ S/R Abs D: The absolute distance reached during the weld from the Upper Limit Switch • -/+ S/R Col D: The collapse distance reached from trigger to end of weld • -/+ S/R Trg D: The distance at which the trigger occurred • -/+ S/R Time: The weld time reached during the weld |
| Velocity Graph | A graph of the velocity of the actuator during weld. |


Table 2.3 Glossary

| Name | Description |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| View Setup | Available in Main Menu as a read only menu identical to the Weld Setup menu. It is not password protected even if the Weld Setup menu is protected. |
| Weld Count | Count of acceptable weld cycles. |
| Weld Energy | The energy specified to be applied to the part during the weld cycle. |
| Weld Force | The force at the end of the weld cycle. |
| Weld History | The last 100,000 weld summary data lines are saved. |
| Weld History Setup | Selects which characteristics will appear in the power supply Weld History screen. |
| Weld Results | A summary of information concerning the last weld cycle. |
| Weld Scale | The power bar LED scale during weld. |
| Weld Time | The time for which ultrasonics are on. |
| Windows Setup | Allows access to the Microsoft Windows screen. |
| Write In Fields | Assign a unique alphanumeric to a specific weld setup and cycle. |
| X Scale Graph | Allows a scaling factor to be applied when auto scale is turned off. |

Chapter 3: Delivery and Handling

| | | |
|------------|----------------------------------------|-----------|
| 3.1 | Shipping and Handling | 38 |
| 3.2 | Receiving | 39 |
| 3.3 | Unpacking | 40 |
| 3.4 | Returning Equipment | 41 |

3.1 Shipping and Handling

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The power supply internal components are sensitive to static discharge. Many components can be harmed if the unit is dropped, shipped under improper conditions or otherwise mishandled.</p> |

3.1.1 Environmental Specifications

The internal components of both the power supply and actuator are sensitive to electrostatic discharge, and many of their components can be harmed if the unit is dropped, shipped under improper conditions, or otherwise mishandled.

The following environmental guidelines should be respected in the shipping of the actuator and power supply.

Table 3.1 Environmental Specifications

| Environmental Condition | Acceptable Range |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Storage/Shipping Temperature | -13° F to +122° F (-25° C to +50° C) |
| Shock/Vibration (transit) | 18" & 36" height shock and 1-200 Hz vibration per ISTA 3A |
| Humidity | Maximum 85%, non-condensing |

3.2 Receiving


Branson actuator and power supply units are carefully checked and packed before dispatch. It is recommended, however, that you follow the procedure below upon receiving your Welding System.

Inspect the equipment when it is delivered:

Table 3.2 Receiving

| Step | Action |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check the equipment immediately after delivery to ensure that they have not been damaged during transport. |
| 2 | Verify that all parts are complete according to the delivery note. |
| 3 | Determine if any component has become loose during shipping and, if necessary, tighten screws. |

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | If the goods delivered have been damaged during shipping, please contact the forwarding agent immediately. Retain packing material (for possible inspection or for sending back the unit). |

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The actuator and the power supply are heavy. Handling, unpacking, and installation may require the assistance of a colleague or the use of lifting platforms or hoists. |

3.3 Unpacking

3.3.1 Actuator Assemblies

Actuator assemblies are heavy and packed in a protective shipping container. The booster, converter, and actuator toolkit are often packed inside the shipping container.

Each actuator is shipped as one of the two assemblies described below, with its own corresponding unpacking procedure. These assemblies vary in both the materials used for shipping and the actual components that you will receive when the actuator is shipped. For complete actuator unpacking and installation procedures, refer to [Chapter 5: Installation and Setup](#).

- **Stand (Actuator on Base):** A stand consisting of an actuator on a base is shipped on a wooden pallet with a cardboard box cover. (The packaging for this assembly is similar to that of an actuator on hub-mounted column)
- **Actuator (Alone):** An actuator that does not use either type of stand is shipped in a rigid cardboard box using protective foam shells for support


3.3.2 Power Supply

The power supply is fully assembled. It is shipped in a sturdy cardboard box. Some additional items are shipped in the box with the power supply.

When unpacking the power supply, take the following steps:

Table 3.3 Unpacking Procedure

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Unpack the power supply as soon as it arrives. Save the packing material. |
| 2 | Inspect the controls, indicators, and surface for signs of damage. |
| 3 | Remove the cover of the power supply (8.8 Parts Replacement) to check if any components became loose during shipping. |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If damage has occurred, notify the shipping company immediately. Retain packing materials for inspection.</p> |

3.4 Returning Equipment

If you are returning equipment to Branson Ultrasonic Corporation, please call your Customer Service Representative to receive approval to return goods to Branson.

If you are returning equipment for repair refer to [1.5 Returning Equipment for Repair](#) of this manual, for appropriate procedure.

Chapter 4: Technical Specifications

4.1 Technical Specifications.....44
4.2 Physical Description.....47

4.1 Technical Specifications

4.1.1 Environmental Requirements

Table 4.1 Environmental Specifications

| Environmental Concern | Acceptable Range |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Ambient Operating Temperature | +41° F to +104° F (+5° C to +40° C) |
| Storage/Shipping Temperature | -13° F to +122° F (-25° C to +50° C) |
| Shock/Vibration (transit) | 18" & 36" height shock and 1-200 Hz vibration per ISTA 3A |
| Operating Altitude | Up to 6560 ft (2000 m) |
| Humidity | Maximum 85%, non-condensing |
| IP Rating | 2X |
| Pollution degree | 2 |
| Overvoltage Category | II |

4.1.2 Electrical Requirements

The following tables list input voltage and current requirements for the 2000Xc Power Supply, and includes power required when it is used with Branson 2000Xc-series Actuators.

Table 4.2 Electrical Input Operating Voltages

| Power Supply Rating | Nominal Input Operating Voltage, +/-10% |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 40 kHz / 800 W | 100 - 120, 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase |
| 30 kHz / 1500 W | 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase |
| 20 kHz / 1250 W | 100 - 120, 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase |
| 20 kHz / 2500 W | 200 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase |
| 20 kHz / 4000 W* | 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase |
| 15 kHz / 3300 W** | 200 - 240V, 50/60 Hz, Single Phase |

*This unit is rated at a 25% duty cycle with 5 second On time, 2000 W continuous. Rated power is 4000 W at 40° C.

**This unit is rated at a 25% duty cycle with 5 second On time, 1600 W continuous.

Table 4.3 Input Current and Fuse Requirements

| Model | Power | Current Rating |
|--------|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| 15 kHz | 3300 W 200V - 240V | 21 Amp Max. @ 220V / 20 Amp fuse |
| 20 kHz | 1250 W 200V - 240V | 7 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse |
| | 1250 W 100V - 120V | 14 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse |
| | 2500 W 200V - 240V | 14 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse |
| | 4000 W* 220V - 240V | 25 Amp Max. @ 220V / 25 Amp fuse |
| 30 kHz | 1500 W 200V - 240V | 10 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse |
| 40 kHz | 800 W 200V - 240V | 5 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse |
| | 800 W 100V - 120V | 10 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse |

Cycle Rate: up to 200 cpm. Cycle rate including off time is application and stack dependent.

*This unit is rated at a 25% duty cycle with 5 second On time, 2000 W continuous. Rated power is 4000 W at 40° C.

4.1.3 Pneumatic Requirements

The factory compressed air supply must be “clean (to a 5 micron level), dry and unlubricated” air with a regulated maximum pressure of 100 psig (690 kPa). Depending on your application, the actuator requires between 35 to 100 psi. Stands include an in-line air filter. Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter. A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required.

Air Filter

Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter which protects from particulate matter of 5 microns or larger. If a stand is mounted in a position other than upright (vertical), its air filter must be relocated and oriented so its bowl is the lowest point, and the air flow across the air filter is horizontal. This may require some re-plumbing of the existing equipment at the customer site. The air filter is held in place by two screws on a bracket bolted to the actuator support, and by the factory-installed tubing.

Pneumatic Tubing and Connectors

Actuator assemblies are not externally plumbed from the factory, but provide conventional 1/4-inch OD pneumatic tubing connection at the air inlet. If making connections for an actuator, or if re-plumbing your system for a new air filter location, you must use 1/4-inch OD tubing and connectors rated above 100 psi (use Parker “Parflex” 1/4 OD x. 040 wall, type 1, grade E5, or equivalent), and appropriate connectors.

Pneumatic Connections to Actuator

Air connection to the actuator is made to the AIR INLET connector on the top rear of the actuator, with plastic pneumatic tubing. For installations using actuator-alone assemblies, you must provide an air filter assembly which will support to at least 100 psig and remove particulate matter of 5 microns or larger.

4.1.4 Actuator Performance Specifications

The following tables detail some of the performance specifications associated with the 2000Xc Actuator.

Table 4.4 Maximum Welding Force (at 100 psig and 4.0" stroke)

| | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1.5" cylinder | 135 lb. / 61.4 k |
| 2.0" cylinder | 269 lb. / 122.3 k. |
| 2.5" cylinder | 441 lb / 200.5 k. |
| 3.0" cylinder | 651 lb. / 295.9 k. |
| 3.25" cylinder | 772 lb. / 350.9 k. |

Table 4.5 Dynamic Trigger Force

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1.5" and 2.0" cylinder | 5 lb. / 2.25 k to max force |
| 2.5", 3.0", and 3.25" cylinder | 10 lb./ 4.5 k. to max force |

Table 4.6 Dynamic Follow-Through

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1.5", 2.0" | 15 lb. / 6.8 k. to max force |
| 2.5", 3.0", 3.25" | 15 - 400 lb. / 6.8 - 181.8 k. |

Table 4.7 Maximum Traverse Speed (Application dependant)

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Down and Return Speed | Up to 7 inch/ 177.8 mm per sec. max at 3.5-inch / 88.9 mm stroke, 90 psi (all cylinder sizes) |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Minimum Stroke: 1/8" / 3.2 mm

Maximum Stroke: 3-3/4" / 95.2 mm (for a 4" cylinder)

4.2 Physical Description

Refer to [Chapter 5: Installation and Setup](#) for dimensional information.

4.2.1 Standard Actuator Items


Actuator Support

The actuator support is firmly clamped to the column. With the actuator support, you can adjust the height of actuator housing above the fixture position. You can set the height as needed for your application, or to facilitate servicing.

Actuator Base

Table 4.8 Description of Controls on Base

| Name | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Start Switches | Activate the operating cycle through the actuator to the power supply when pressed simultaneously. |
| Emergency Stop Button | Interrupts the operating cycle (through the power supply) and causes the carriage to retract. Twist to reset. |
| Start Cable | Connects base to START connector on actuator. |

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | This equipment is designed to be operated by one (1) person only. |

Slide Mechanism

The slide mechanism is based on eight sets of preloaded, permanently lubricated bearings, providing consistent, precise alignment of the horn, smooth linear motion, and long-term reliability.

Limit Switch


The optical Upper Limit Switch (ULS) signals the control circuits in the power supply that the carriage has returned to the top of its stroke (home) and is ready to start another operating cycle.


The power supply uses the signals from the actuator to perform various control functions, as in the following examples:

- **Indexing Control:** The linear encoder generates an Actuator Clear signal at a preset distance along the travel of the horn. This signal can be used to trigger a safety interlock switch, controlling movement of the material handling equipment (indexing) before the horn is fully retracted
- **Automatic Pretriggering:** A 2000Xc Power Supply can use the ULS signal, or encoder distance, to activate ultrasonics before the horn contacts the workpiece. Pretriggering is used with large or difficult-to-start horns and in specialized applications

Mechanical Stop

The mechanical stop limits the downward travel of the horn. To prevent equipment damage, adjust the stop so that the horn will not contact the fixture when no workpiece is in place. There is an indicator on the right side showing the position of the stop block. It is not intended for use in welding by distance.

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Do not loosen the top hex-headed nut. Damage to the mechanical stop can result. |

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Turning clockwise will increase the stroke length; turning counter-clockwise will shorten the stroke length. Adjustment is approximately 0.04-inch (1 mm) per rotation. |

Pneumatic System

The pneumatic system is contained within the actuator and the remote pneumatics box. The system consists of:

- Primary solenoid valve
- Cooling solenoid valve
- Air cylinder
- Pressure regulator
- Rapid traverse valve
- Downspeed flow control valve

Figure 4.1 2000Xc Actuator Pneumatic System

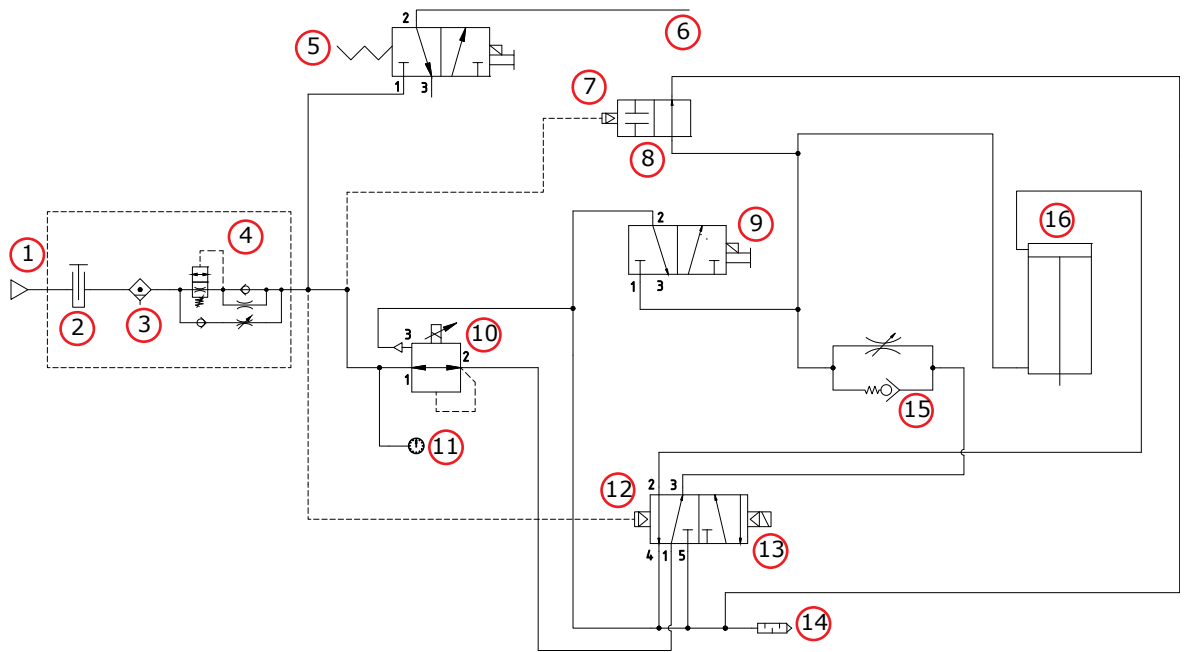


Table 4.9 2000Xc Actuator Pneumatic System

| Item | Description |
|------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1 | Supply pressure |
| 2 | Slide valve |
| 3 | Filter |
| 4 | Soft start valve |
| 5 | Cooling valve |
| 6 | Cooling connector reducer to RF harness |
| 7 | Pilot |
| 8 | Spool valve |
| 9 | Rapid traverse |
| 10 | Electronic regulator |
| 11 | Pressure indicator |
| 12 | External pilot |
| 13 | Primary valve |
| 14 | Muffler |
| 15 | Flow Control |
| 16 | Cylinder |

S-Beam Load Cell and Dynamic Follow Through

The S-Beam Load Cell measures the force being applied to the part to trigger ultrasonics and record the welding parameters. The S-Beam Load Cell assembly ensures that pressure is applied to the part prior to the application of ultrasonic energy.

To maintain horn-to-part contact and force as the joint collapses, the S-Beam Load Cell assembly provides dynamic follow-through. As the plastic melts, the S-Beam Load Cell assembly ensures smooth transmission of ultrasonic energy into the part.

Linear Encoder

The encoder measures the distance the horn has traveled. Depending on the power supply settings, it can:

- Allow for distance welding
- Detect improper setup controls
- Monitor the quality of the weld
- Decrease cycle time by generating signal to initiate indexing of material handling equipment before horn is fully retracted

4.2.2 Ultrasonic Power Supply

The 2000Xc Power Supply is part of an industrial system that can be used for ultrasonic welding, inserting, staking, spot welding, swaging, and degating thermoplastic parts, and for cutting and sealing thermoplastic fabric and film.

Figure 4.2 Rear View of 2000Xc Power Supply

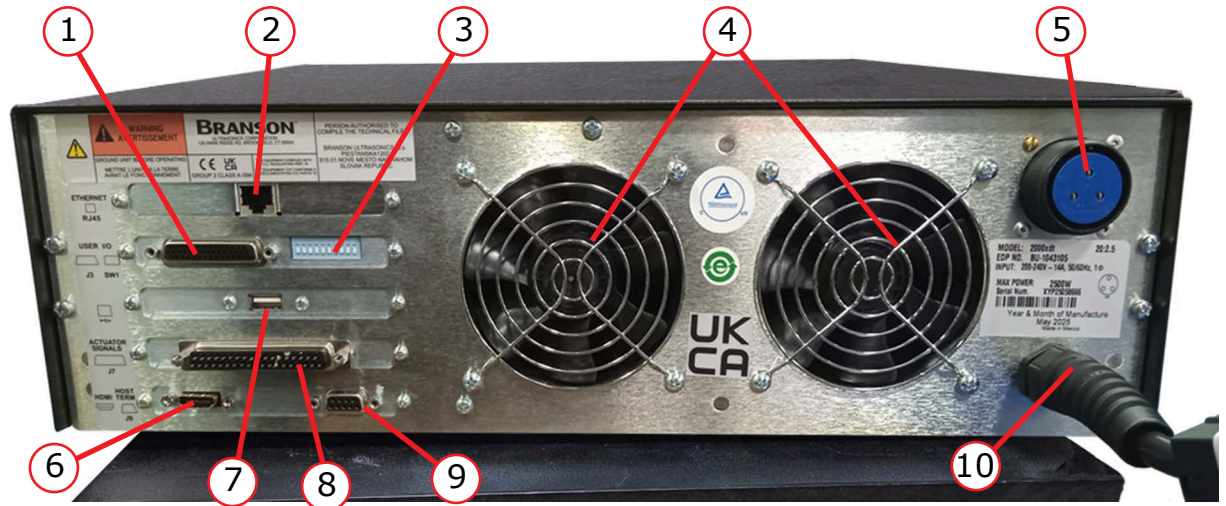


Table 4.10 Connections on Rear of Power Supply

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|------|-------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| 1 | User I/O Connector | 2 | Ethernet Connector |
| 3 | DIP Switch for User I/O | 4 | Fans |
| 5 | RF Connector | 6 | HDMI Connector |
| 7 | USB Connector | 8 | Actuator Interface connector |
| 9 | RS-232c Port | 10 | Power Cord |

The 2000Xc Power Supply is the combination of two welding system elements in one enclosure. These elements are a power source for ultrasonic energy and a major portion of the welding system control, including the user interface. The enclosure is a standard 19" rack-mount compatible design, and can be stacked or installed up to three units high. Its design is readily convertible from its normal desktop configuration for standard 19-inch rack mount applications by adding the rack mount handles (available as a kit). The Chassis is approximately 20 inches (51 cm) in depth.

The 2000Xc's control system is microprocessor-based, and controls the welding process while providing a level of user interface through a membrane keypad and alpha-numeric display. It employs fan-forced cooling, and is intended for horizontal placement. The front panel display and user controls are intended to be accessible from a comfortable position for an end user (operator), which means that the unit will often be installed approximately 3 to 5 feet off the floor.

4.2.3 Circuit Descriptions

The 2000Xc Power Supply contains the following modules:

- Line Board
- System Control Board
- Ultrasonic Power Module
- DC Power Module
- User I/O

The following sections contain descriptions for each module.

Line Board

The Line Board performs the dual function of providing RFI filtering for the line voltage input to the power supply, and controlling the electrical current surge to the ultrasonic power supply module at power up until the inrush current limit relay engages. The filtering also blocks ultrasonic signals from entering the AC main line. Additionally, the Line Board contains a soft start circuit module which limits the effects of current inrush.

System Control Board

The System Control Board controls the following functions of the power supply:

- Responding to start and stop signals
- Responding to alarm and reset signals
- Responding to user input from the front panel
- Activating and monitoring ultrasonics
- Provides information for Front Panel Displays
- Generate alarms
- Control communications

Ultrasonic Power Supply

The ultrasonic power supply module generates ultrasonic energy at the resonant frequency of your converter-booster-horn stack. The ultrasonic power supply module is configured as either analog or digital, and each contains five main circuits. The analog power supply has one preset which calls up the factory default setting. The digital power supply has a library of locked presets which are accessible for various process parameter modifications that are unique to the power supply itself. These modifications can be named to reflect specific applications, and are loaded into memory prior to shipment from the Branson factory. The parameters of the individual presets can be modified by a Branson representative. Initially all presets are set to factory default. They are accessed via an RS-232c link to the system controller.

- **320VDC Power Supply:** converts AC line voltage to +320VDC for the output power devices
- **Output Circuit:** Matches the impedance of the output power device to the Converter-Booster-Horn Stack; and provides feedback to the Control circuit
- **Control Circuits:** perform the following functions:
 - Provide drive signal to output power device
 - Determine true percentage of ultrasonic power used over a range of amplitudes
 - Allow control of the resonant frequency
 - Control starting amplitude
 - Provide overload protection for the Ultrasonic Power Module
 - Store operating frequency of last weld (frequency memory) and use the stored frequency as a starting point for the next weld
 - Check and update frequency memory on start-up
 - Provide switch-selective starting ramp times (Start)

DC Power Module

The Switching DC Power Module rectifies, filters, and regulates the AC voltages from the Line Transformer into DC voltages for the System Control Module. These two circuits are described below:

- **5VDC Output:** Provides +5VDC for the analog and digital circuitry on the System Control Module
- **24VDC Output:** Provides +24VDC for the System Control Module control signal and user I/O voltage

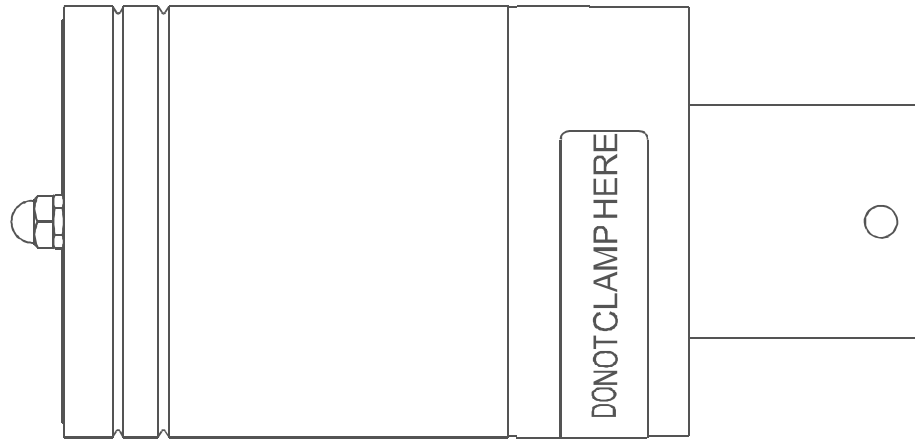
User I/O

The User I/O provides a standard user interface and is accessed on the rear of the power supply at J3. It gives the customer the ability to make their own interface for special control and/or special reporting needs. Electrical interface outputs may be configured for open collector mode or for signal mode (signal voltage levels as indicated) by setting the User I/O DIP switch located next to J3.

4.2.4 Converters and Boosters

A variety of converters and boosters available, for use with the 2000Xc welding systems. Refer to [Chapter 8: Maintenance](#) for compatible converter and booster part numbers.

Figure 4.3 Typical Converter




Chapter 5: Installation and Setup

| | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 5.1 | About Installation | 56 |
| 5.2 | Handling and Unpacking | 57 |
| 5.3 | Take Inventory of Small Parts | 60 |
| 5.4 | Installation Requirements | 62 |
| 5.5 | Installation Steps | 71 |
| 5.6 | Guards and Safety Equipment | 84 |
| 5.7 | Rack Mount Installation | 85 |
| 5.8 | Assemble the Acoustic Stack | 87 |
| 5.9 | Mounting the Fixture on the Base | 94 |
| 5.10 | Testing the Installation | 95 |
| 5.11 | Still Need Help? | 96 |

5.1 About Installation

This chapter is intended to help the installer with the basic installation and setup of your new 2000Xc welding system.

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The actuator and related components are heavy. Handling, unpacking, and installation can require help or the use of lifting platforms or hoists. |

International safety labels are found on the power supply and actuator. Those that are of importance during installation of the system are identified in the figures in this and other chapters of this manual.

5.2 Handling and Unpacking

If there are any visible signs of damage to the shipping containers or the product, or you later discover hidden damage, notify your carrier immediately. Save the packing material.

1. Unpack the 2000Xc components as soon as they arrive. Refer to the following procedures
2. Verify you have all of the equipment ordered. Some components are packed inside other boxes
3. Inspect the controls, indicators, and surfaces for signs of damage
4. Save all packing material, including the pallets and wood spacer blocks. Evaluation systems will be returned using this packing material

5.2.1 Unpack the Power Supply

Power supplies are shipped in a cardboard carton. It weighs approximately 40 lbs

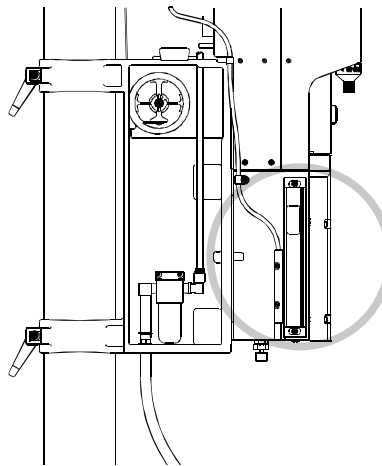
1. Open the box, remove the two foam top packing halves and lift the power supply out
2. Remove the toolkit(s) and other components shipped with the power supply. These items may be shipped in small, separate boxes, or underneath the power supply in the box
3. Save the packing material; evaluation systems will be returned using this packing material


5.2.2 Unpack the Stand or Actuator

The stand (or actuator) is heavy and packed in a protective shipping container. The actuator toolkit is packed with the actuator. A booster, converter and other components may be packed inside the shipping container (depending on the equipment ordered).

- Stands are shipped on a wooden pallet with a cardboard box cover
- Actuators (alone) are shipped in a rigid cardboard box using protective foam shells for support

Figure 5.1 Linear Encoder



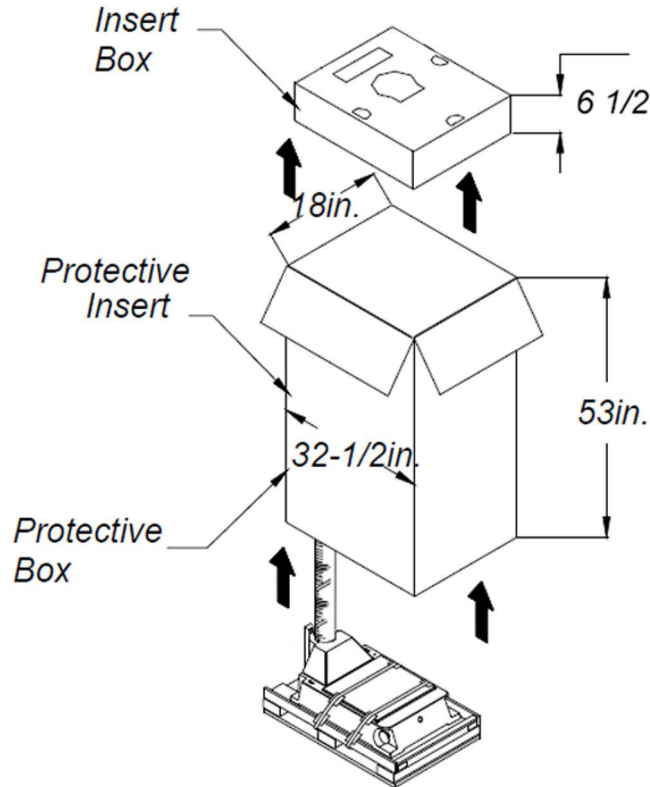
| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The linear encoder (on the left side of the actuator) is very sensitive. Do not use the linear encoder assembly as a hand-hold, allow no impact on it, and do not place any weight on it.</p> |

Depending on which one of the following options applies to you, unpack the Branson actuator assembly.


5.2.3 Stand (actuator on a base)

Heed the "This End Up" arrows and the "Open Top First" instructions. The packaging is designed to be removed from the assemblies from an upright orientation only.

Figure 5.2 Unpacking the Stand (Actuator on a Base)



- Move the shipping container close to the intended installation location, leave it on the floor
- Open the top of the box. Remove the insert from the top of the protective box
- Remove the staples at the bottom of the protective box. Lift the protective box off the pallet
- Remove the protective insert around the actuator

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The column and column support are under spring tension from the counterbalance spring. Do NOT attempt to disassemble the column from the stand, but always keep the column support clamped together. When making height adjustments, carefully and slowly release the clamps to control the motion, and hold the stand to prevent sudden movements or injury.</p> |

- Cut the two packing straps around the base and pallet. Pry off the two wooden shipping blocks (to the rear of the base) which prevent the base from sliding on the pallet
- The stand can now be moved into its desired location by sliding it off the pallet. Stands have a lifting hook for the use of overhead hoists to lift the assembly in place
- Remove the block of wood between the base and the column support by carefully loosening the two column clamps (allowing the actuator to rise slightly, but not allow sudden movements) and then cutting the shipping tape on the block of wood. **RETIGHTEN THE COLUMN CLAMPS**
- Unpack the toolkit, insert box, and other parts (converter, booster, etc.) that may have shipped with the stand. Save the packing material

- Go to [5.3 Take Inventory of Small Parts](#). See [Table 5.1](#)

5.2.4 Actuator (Alone)

The actuator, if shipped alone, is assembled and ready to install

- Move the shipping container close to the intended installation location, leave it on the floor
- Open the top of the cardboard box, remove the insert from the top of the box and set it aside
- The toolkit, mounting bolts, and converter and/or booster are shipped with the actuator but in separate shipping box(es). Unpack the converter, booster, toolkit and bolts from their packages
- Save the packing material


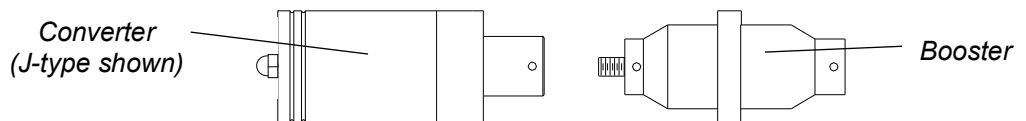
| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The packaging may also include the converter and/or booster, if ordered.</p> |

Figure 5.3 Ultrasonic Converter (J-Type for Stand-Alone Use) and Booster



5.3 Take Inventory of Small Parts

Table 5.1 Small Parts included (=x) with Power Supply and/or Actuator Assemblies

| Part or Kit | 2000Xc Power Supply | | | Actuator | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | 20 kHz | 30 kHz | 40 kHz | Stand (Base) | (Alone) |
| T-Handle Wrench | | | | x | x |
| Mylar Washer Kit | x | x | | | |
| Silicone Grease | | | x | | |
| Actuator Mtg. Bolts | | | | | x |
| 20 kHz Spanners (2) | x | | | | |
| 30 kHz Spanners (2) | | x | | | |
| 40 kHz Spanners (2) | | | x | | |
| 40 kHz Sleeve | | | | Ordered part | Ordered part |
| 40 kHz Sleeve Spanner | | | | Ships w/ sleeve | Ships w/ sleeve |
| Fixture Bolts and Washer | | | | x | |
| M8 Allen Wrench | | | | x | |

5.3.1 Cables

Two cables connect the power supply and actuator: the actuator interface cable, and the RF cable. For other interfacing requirements, you may also need a user I/O cable. Check your invoice for cable types and cable lengths.

Table 5.2 List of Cables

| Part Number | Description |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 100-246-630 | Ground Detect Cable |
| 101-241-203 | Actuator Interface, 8' (J925S) |
| 101-241-204 | Actuator Interface, 15' (J925S) |
| 101-241-205 | Actuator Interface, 25' (J925S) |
| 101-241-207 | User I/O, 8' (J957S) |
| 101-241-208 | User I/O, 15' (J957S) |
| 101-241-209 | User I/O, 25' (J957S) |
| 101-240-176 | RF, EN - 8' (J931CS) |
| 101-240-177 | RF, EN - 15' (J931CS) |
| 101-240-178 | RF, EN - 25' (J931CS) Note: Not for 30 kHz or 40 kHz systems |
| 101-240-179 | RF, EN - 8' (J934C) |
| 159-240-188 | RF, 15' RT ANGLE |
| 159-240-182 | RF, EN - 20' (J934C) |
| 101-241-207D | User I/O, 8' (J957S) (Europe) |
| 101-241-208D | User I/O, 15' (J957S) (Europe) |
| 101-241-209D | User I/O, 25' (J957S) (Europe) |

5.4 Installation Requirements

This section covers the location options, dimensions of the major assemblies, environmental requirements, electrical requirements and factory air requirements, to help you plan and execute your installation successfully.

5.4.1 Location

The actuator or stand may be installed in a variety of positions. The stand (on a base) is often manually operated, using its base-mounted start switches, and so is installed at a safe and comfortable workbench height (approximately 30-36 inches) with the operator sitting or standing in front of the system. Actuators alone can be mounted in any orientation. Contact Branson if mounting upside down.

The stand may tip over if moved around the axis of its column, if not properly secured. The work surface on which a stand is installed must be sturdy enough to support it, and secure enough to not tip over when the stand is adjusted during installation or setup.

The 2000Xc Power Supply must not be positioned so that is difficult to plug in or unplug the main power plug.

The power supply may be located up to 50 feet away for 20 kHz (20' for 30 kHz, and 15' for 40 kHz models) from the actuator. The power supply must be accessible for user parameter changes and settings, and must be placed in a horizontal orientation. The power supply should be positioned so it does not draw in dust, dirt or material via its rear fans. Refer to the illustrations on the pages that follow for a dimensional drawing of each component. All dimensions are approximate and may vary between models:

[Figure 5.4 Power Supply Dimensional Drawing](#)

[Figure 5.5 2000Xc Actuator Dimensional Drawing](#)

Figure 5.4 Power Supply Dimensional Drawing

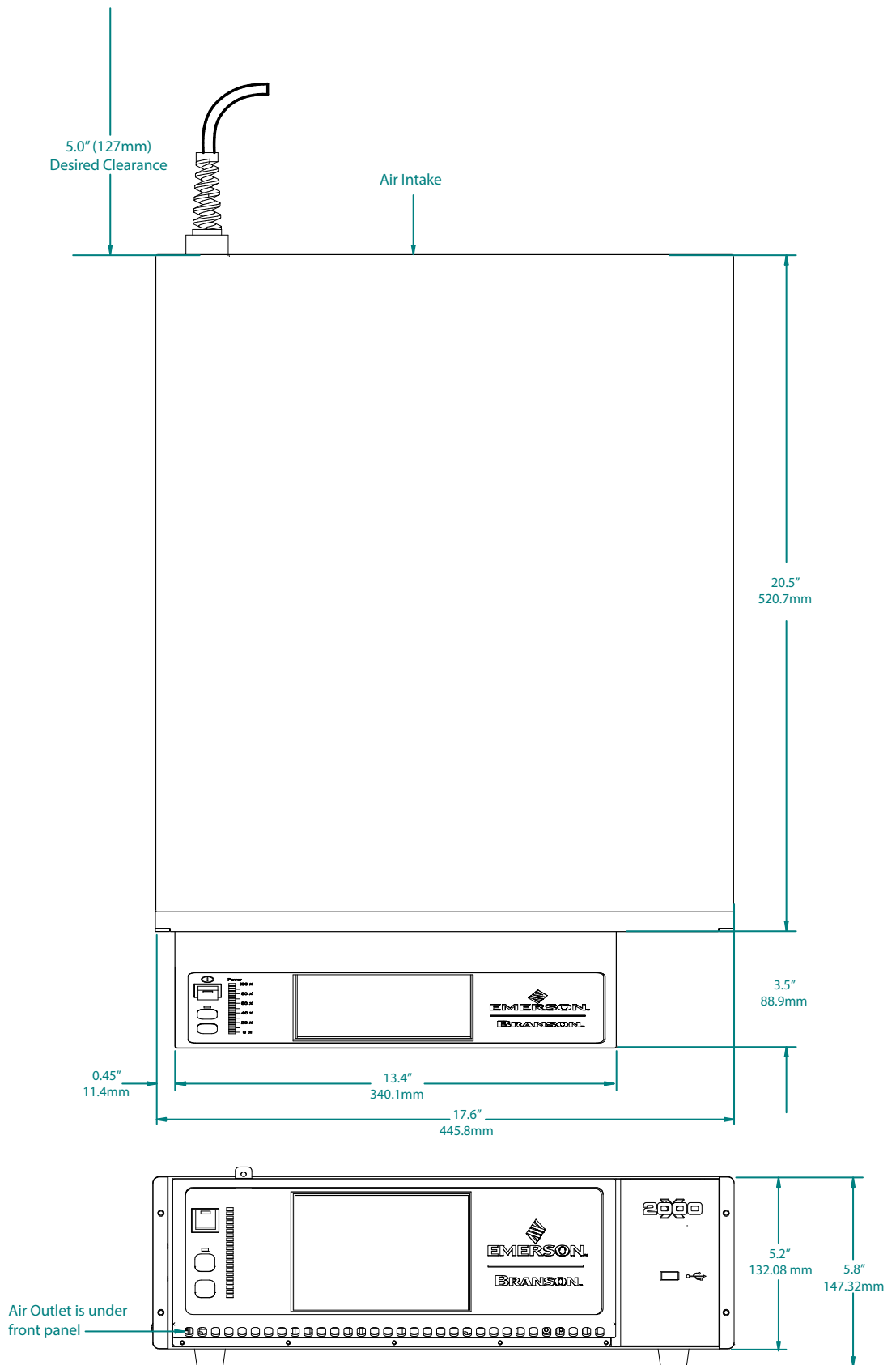
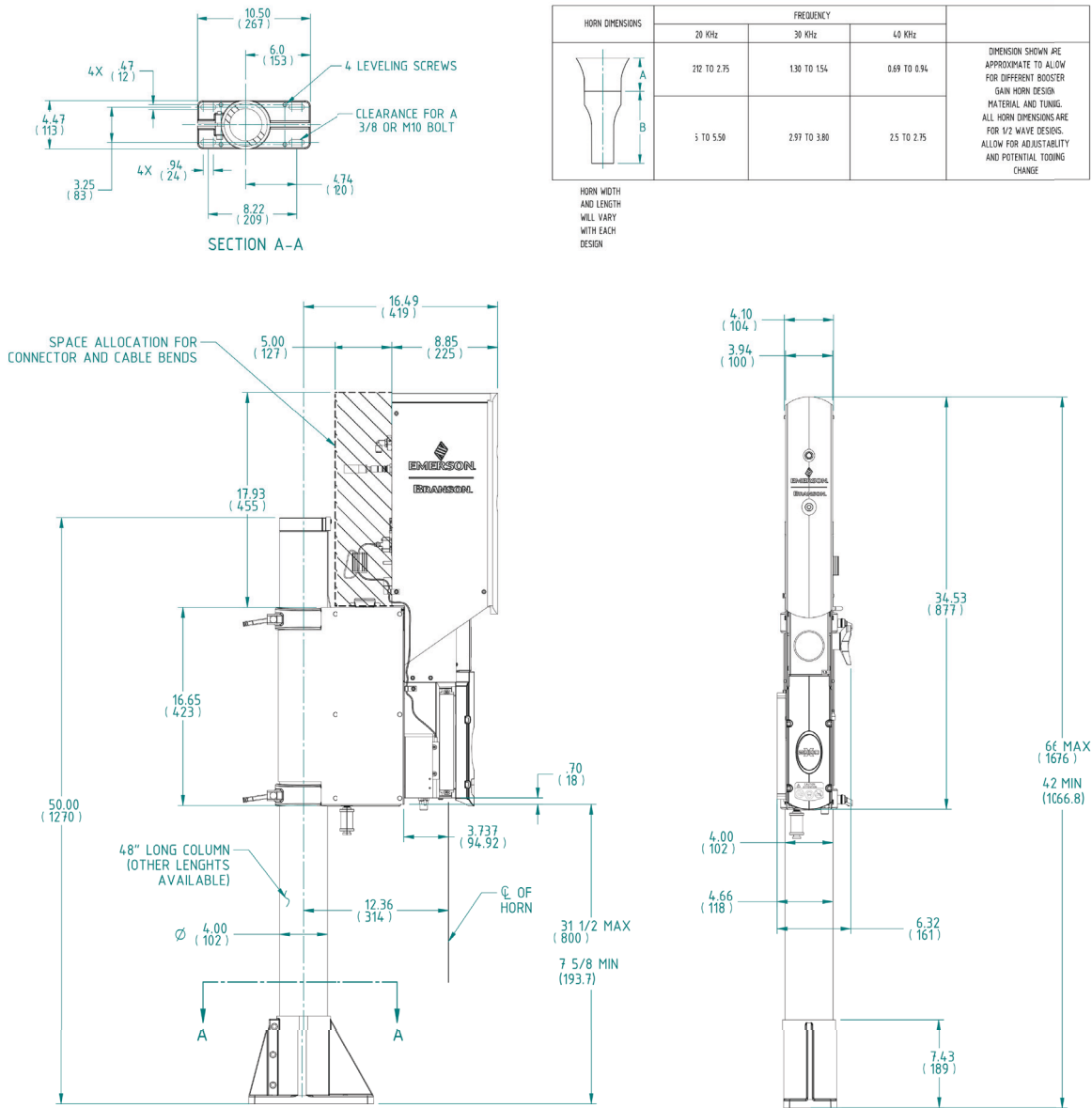
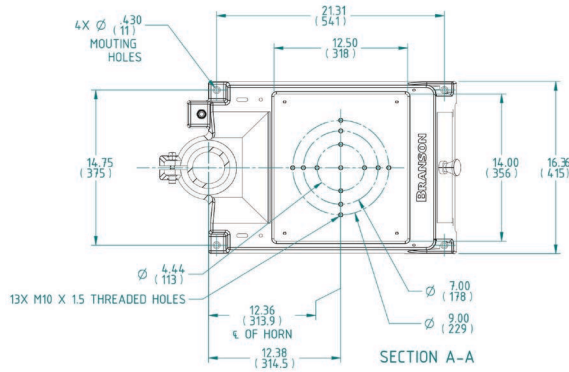


Figure 5.5 2000Xc Actuator Dimensional Drawing
Hub

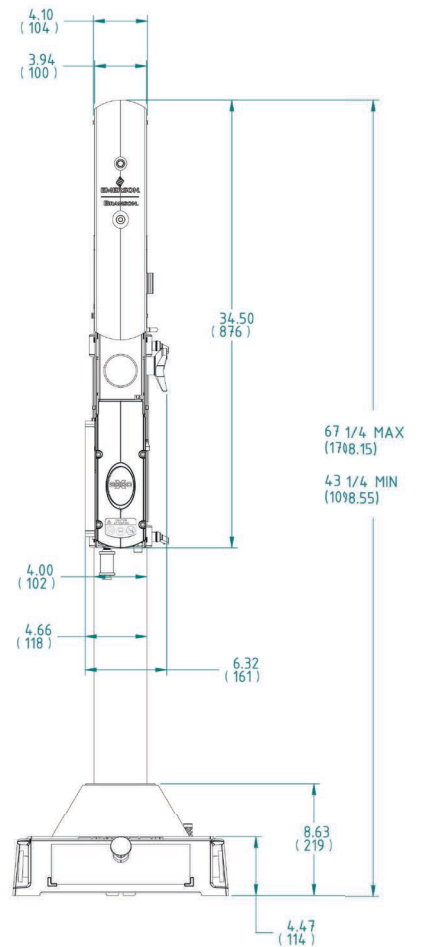
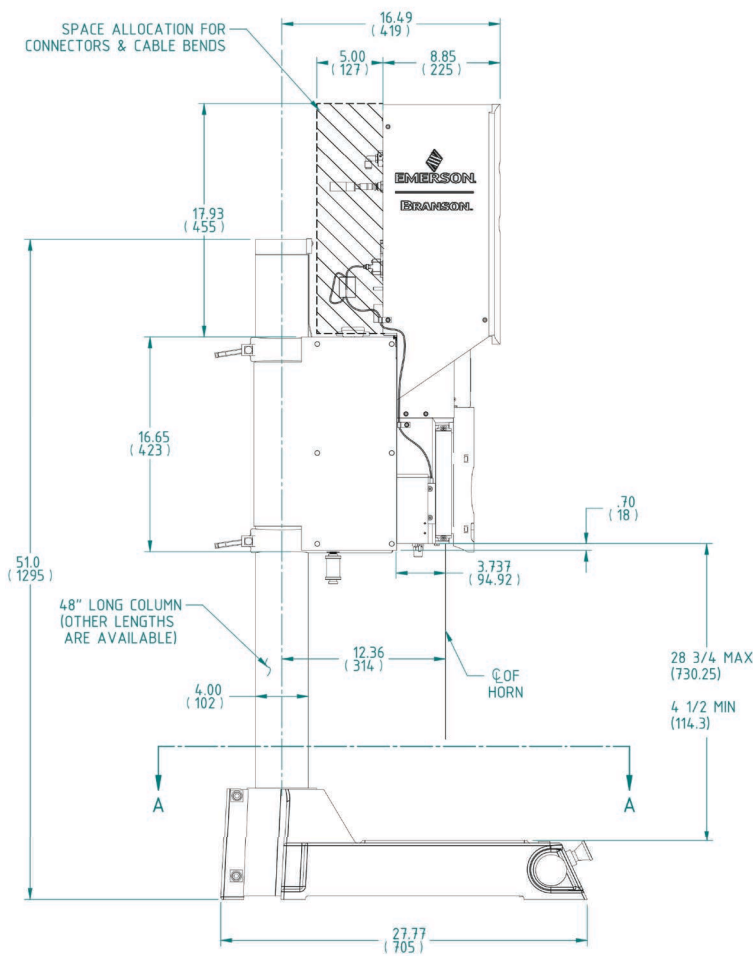


Base Mount

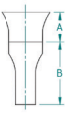


| HORN DIMENSIONS | FREQUENCY | | | DIMENSIONS SHOWN ARE APPROXIMATE TO ALLOW FOR DIFFERENT BOOSTER GAIN HORN DESIGN, MATERIAL AND TUNING. ALL HORN DIMENSIONS ARE FOR 1/2 WAVE DESIGNS. ALLOW FOR ADJUSTABILITY AND POTENTIAL TOOLING CHANGE. |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | 20 KHz | 30 KHz | 40 KHz | |
| | 2.12 TO 2.75 | 1.30 TO 1.54 | 0.69 TO 0.94 | |
| | 5 TO 5.50 | 2.97 TO 3.80 | 2.5 TO 2.75 | |

HORN WIDTH AND LENGTH WILL VARY WITH EACH DESIGN



Actuator

| HORN DIMENSIONS | FREQUENCY | | | DIMENSIONS SHOWN ARE APPROXIMATE TO ALLOW FOR DIFFERENT BOOSTER GAIN HORN DESIGN, MATERIAL AND TUNING. ALL HORN DIMENSIONS ARE FOR 1/2 WAVE DESIGNS. ALLOW FOR ADJUSTABILITY AND POTENTIAL TOOLING CHANGE. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| | 20 KHz | 30 KHz | 40 KHz | |
|  | 2.0 TO 2.75 | 1.30 TO 1.54 | 0.69 TO 0.94 | |
| | 5 TO 5.50 | 2.97 TO 3.80 | 2.5 TO 2.75 | |

HORN WIDTH AND LENGTH WILL VARY WITH EACH DESIGN

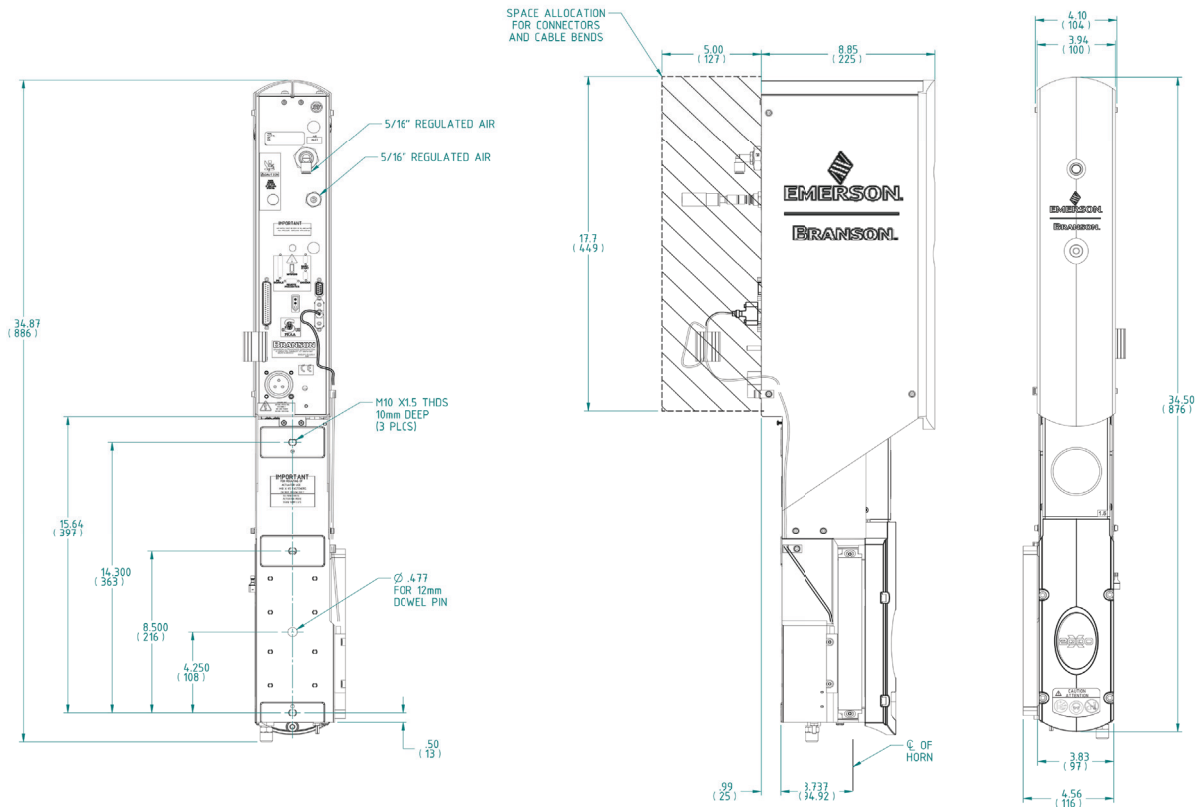
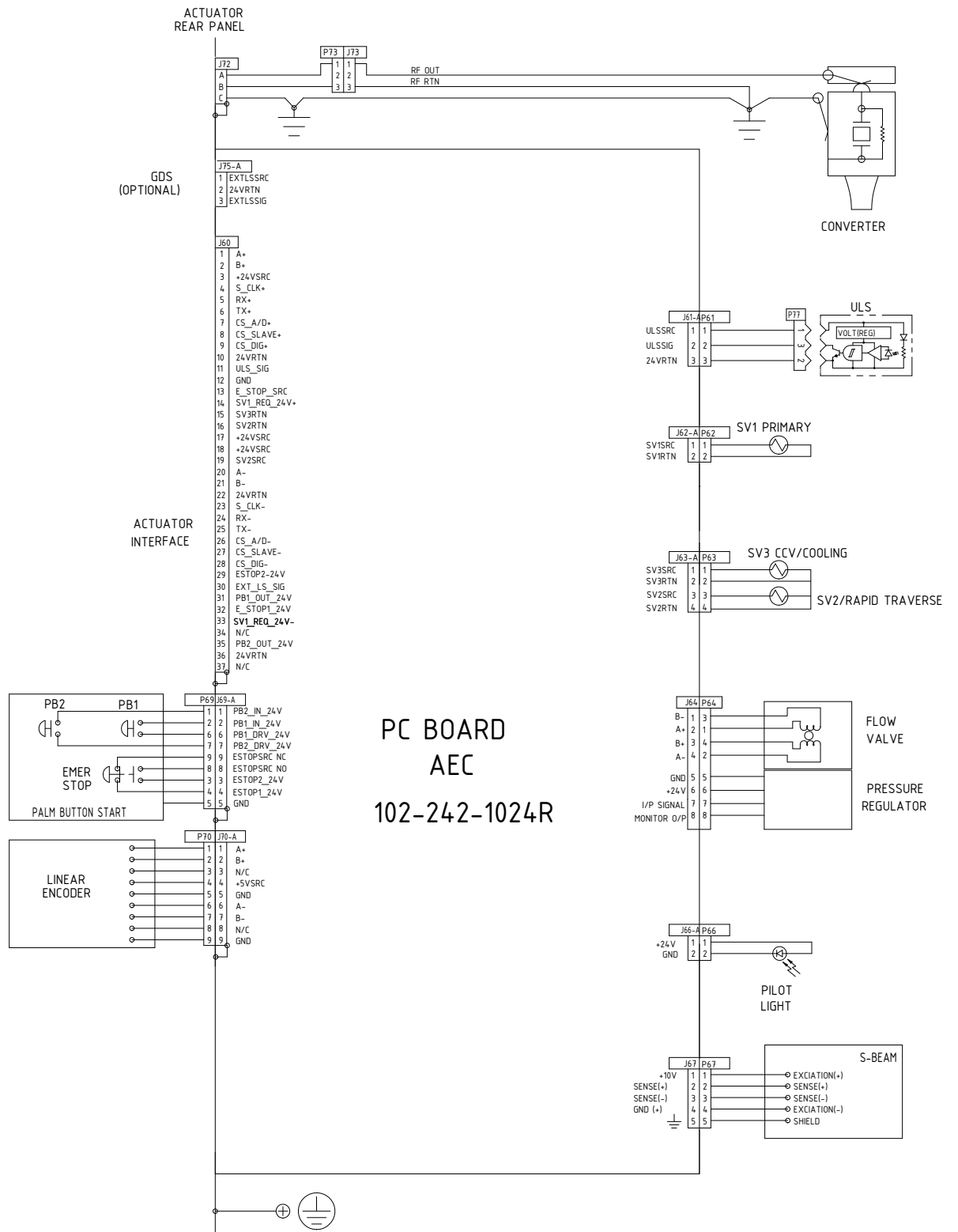


Figure 5.6 Block Wiring Diagram



5.4.2 Electrical Input Power Ratings

Plug the power supply into a single-phase, grounded, 3-wire, 50 or 60 Hz power source. [Table 5.3](#) lists the current and fuse ratings for the various models.

The ground screw on the rear of the actuator must be connected to earth ground with #8 gauge wire.


Table 5.3 Electrical Input Power Ratings Requirements

| Model | Power | Current Rating | NEMA Connector |
|--------|--------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| 15 kHz | 3300 W 200V - 240V | 21 Amp Max. @220V / 25 Amp fuse | * |
| 20 kHz | 1250 W 200V - 240V | 7 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse | NEMA L6-20P Plug |
| | 1250 W 100V - 120V | 14 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse | NEMA 5-15P Plug |
| | 2500 W 200V - 240V | 14 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse | NEMA L6-20P Plug |
| | 4000 W 220V - 240V | 25 Amp Max. @ 220V / 25 Amp fuse | * |
| 30 kHz | 1500 W 200V - 240V | 10 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse | NEMA L6-20P Plug |
| 40 kHz | 800 W 200V - 240V | 5 Amp Max. @ 200V / 20 Amp fuse | NEMA L6-20P Plug |
| | 800 W 100V - 120V | 10 Amp Max. @ 100V / 20 Amp fuse | NEMA 5-15P Plug |

* To be hardwired by customer.

5.4.3 Factory Air

The factory compressed air supply must be “clean (to a 5 micron level), dry and unlubricated” air with a regulated maximum pressure of 100 psig (690 kPa). Depending on your application, the actuator requires between 35 to 100 psi. Stands include an in-line air filter. Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter. A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required.

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Synthetic air compressor lubricants containing Silicone or WD-40 will cause internal actuator damage and failure due to the solvents contained within these types of lubricants.</p> |

5.4.4 Air Filter

Actuators (alone) require a customer-provided air filter which protects from particulate matter of 5 microns or larger.

5.4.5 Pneumatic Tubing and Connectors

Actuator assemblies are not externally plumbed from the factory, but provide conventional 1/4-inch OD pneumatic tubing connection at the air inlet. If making connections for an actuator, or if re-plumbing your system for a new air filter location, you must use 1/4-inch OD tubing and connectors rated above 100 psi (use Parker “Parflex” 1/4 OD x .040 wall, type 1, grade E5, or equivalent), and appropriate connectors.

5.4.6 Pneumatic Connections to Actuator

Air connection to the 2000Xc Actuator is made to the AIR INLET connector on the top rear of the actuator, with plastic pneumatic tubing. For installations using actuator-alone assemblies, you must provide an air filter assembly which will support at least to 100 psig and remove particulate matter of 5 microns or larger. Refer to [Chapter 4: Technical Specifications](#) for a Pneumatic Schematic.

5.4.7 Air Cylinder Consumption

Table 5.4 Cubic Feet of air per minute per inch of stroke length (each direction)

| Air Pressure | 1.5" | 2" | 2.5" | 3" |
|--------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 10 | 0.00174 | 0.00317 | 0.00490 | 0.00680 |
| 20 | 0.00243 | 0.00437 | 0.00680 | 0.00960 |
| 30 | 0.00312 | 0.00557 | 0.00870 | 0.01240 |
| 40 | 0.00381 | 0.00677 | 0.01060 | 0.01520 |
| 50 | 0.00450 | 0.00800 | 0.01250 | 0.01800 |
| 60 | 0.00513 | 0.00930 | 0.01440 | 0.02080 |
| 70 | 0.00590 | 0.01040 | 0.01630 | 0.02350 |
| 80 | 0.00660 | 0.01170 | 0.01830 | 0.02670 |
| 90 | 0.00730 | 0.01300 | 0.02040 | 0.02910 |
| 100 | 0.00800 | 0.01420 | 0.02230 | 0.03190 |

Use the table above to calculate the air used by the air cylinder.

Add 0.034 cubic foot per second (2CFM) of actual weld time to account for converter cooling air per weld cycle.

Example:

3.0" 2000Xc Actuator running at full pressure (100psi) and stroke length (4") at a cycle rate of 20 parts per minute = 0.0319 CFM per inch of stroke (from table) x 8" (total stroke is 4" down and 4" back) equals 0.2552 CFM per stroke

Weld time is 1 second, so: $0.034 \times 1 = 0.034$ CFM for cooling


Add 0.2552 CFM for cylinder to 0.034 CFM for cooling equals 0.2892 CFM per cycle

Multiply by 20 (parts per minute) for a total of 5.784 CFM

The example above is to be considered a worst case condition for a welder to run at.


The 2000Xc Power Supply is unique since it's pneumatics are used in a differential mode of operation. For this reason, use the 100psi values from the above table to be on the conservative side for sizing airflow, rather than on the actual force values. Be sure to add the converter cooling value, 0.034.

5.5 Installation Steps

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>This product is heavy and can cause a pinching or crushing injury during installation or adjustment. Keep clear of moving parts and do not loosen clamps unless directed to do so.</p> |

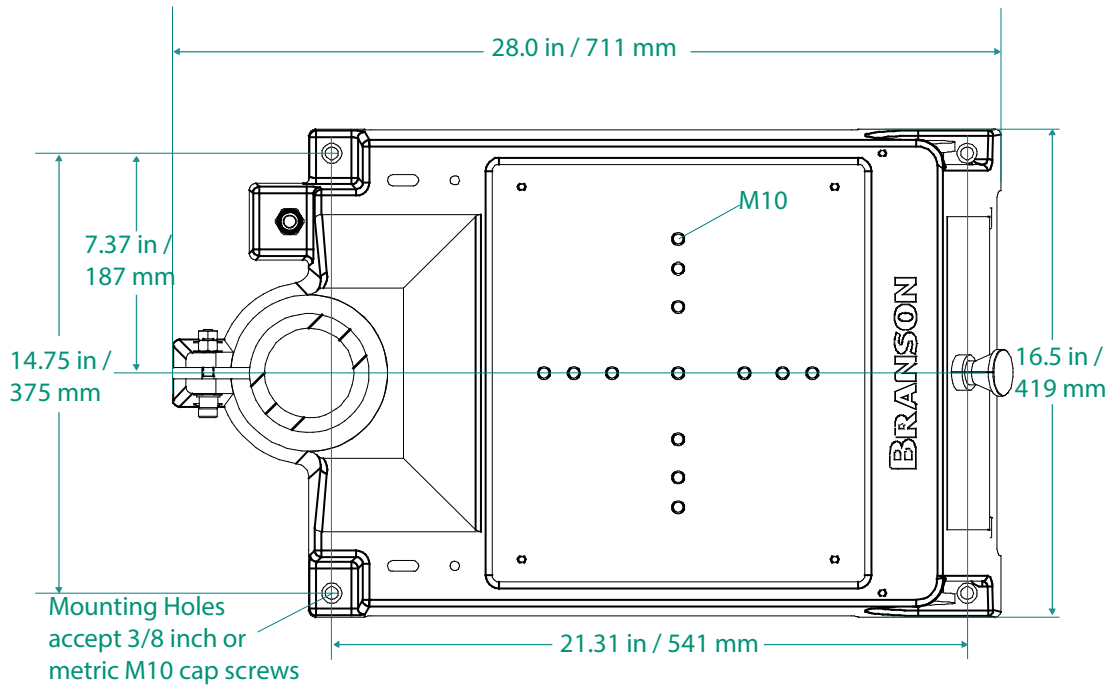
5.5.1 Mounting the Stand (Actuator on Base)

The base must be bolted to your workbench to prevent tipping or undesired movement. Four mounting bolt holes are provided at the corners of the casting, and will accept your 3/8 inch or M10 cap screws. Use flat washers against the metal casting to prevent gouging. Refer to [Figure 5.7](#).

| CAUTION | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>You must secure the base to your work surface using four bolts, to prevent tipping or undesired movement, in the event the actuator is moved off-center or rotated around the column.</p> |


1. Ensure there are no overhead obstructions and that no pinch or rub points exist. Remember that the actuator is taller than the column when fully raised, and there are exposed connections
2. Mount the base to your workbench using four socket-head cap screws (customer provided, 3/8 inch or M10). Use flat washers against the metal casting to prevent gouging. The use of nylon lock nuts with your cap screws is suggested, to reduce loosening due to vibration and movement
3. Connect factory air to the air hose on the stand (3/8 NPT male fitting on the hose). A quick-disconnect fitting is suggested. Use a lockout device on the air line if required
4. Verify the base/start switch control cable is properly connected to the back of actuator
5. Verify the linear encoder connector is properly connected to the back of the actuator
6. Verify earth ground is connected with #8 gauge wire to the ground terminal on the rear of the actuator

Figure 5.7 Base Mounting Centers




5.5.2 Actuator (Alone)

The actuator (alone) is intended for installation on your custom-made mounting support. It is located in place with a mounting pin and secured using three metric bolts.

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>In a custom installation, the actuator must be mounted on an I-beam or other rigid structure. The mounting surface must be flat within 0.004 in (0.1mm) Total Indicator Reading, in a tolerance zone of 16 x 3.5 in (410 x 90 mm).</p> |

1. Lift the actuator from the box. Carefully lay the assembly on its right side (NOT on the side with the linear encoder)
2. Use of a guide pin is suggested. It is not provided with the actuator. If you require a guide pin, use a solid metal dowel pin, 12mm diameter, which must not extend into the actuator more than 0.40 inch (10mm) from your support

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The actuator support bolts for the 2000Xc-series actuators are metric, M10 x 1.5 thread pitch, 25mm long. The support pin and mounting bolts must not extend more than 0.40 in (10 mm) into the actuator, otherwise, binding or damage to the carriage may occur.</p> |


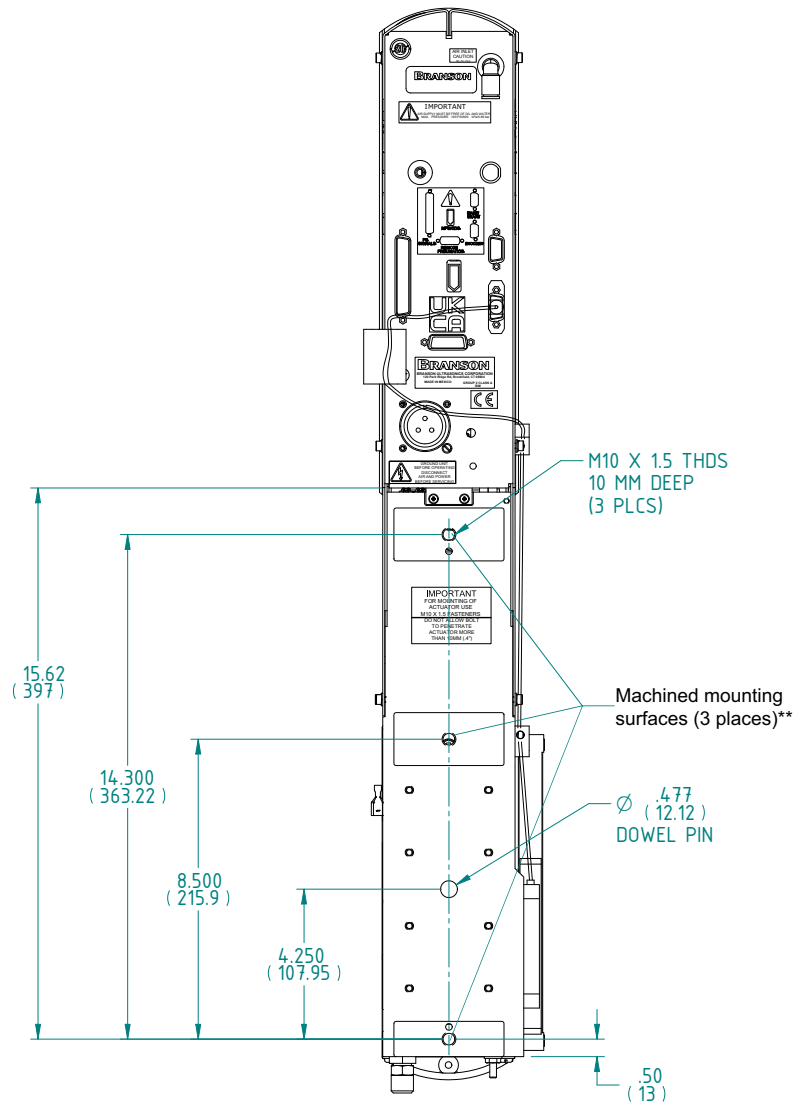
| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>DO NOT use 900-Series M10 x 1.25 mounting bolts. They have a different thread pitch and will not interchange with those used on the 2000Xc-Series.</p> |


Figure 5.8 Rear view of Actuator, showing Mounting Surface, Bolt and Guide Pin locations



Rear view of ae/aed actuator is shown. Although other actuators will vary in height, referenced dimensions will be the same for all models.

**These three mounting surfaces are flat within 0.004 in. (0.1mm) TIR, in a tolerance zone of 16 x 3.5 in. (410 x 90 mm). The surface to which the actuator is mounted must also have the same flatness tolerance.

- Lift the actuator assembly into position on your mount, and secure using the metric bolts provided

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>In the event you must use bolts of a different length, ensure that the bolts extend more than 0.25 inch (6 mm) into the threads in the actuator housing, but less than 0.40 inch (10 mm).</p> |

5.5.3 Mount the Power Supply

The power supply is designed to be placed on a workbench (rubber feet on bottom) within cable-length limits of the actuator, or it may be rack-mounted in a standard 19-inch Rack (using an optional rack mount handle kit). It has two rear-mounted fans which draw cooling air from rear to front, which must be free from obstruction. Do not place the power supply on the floor or in other locations that will allow dust, dirt or contaminants to be drawn into the power supply.

The controls on the front of the power supply must be accessible and readable for setup changes.

All electrical connections are made to the rear of the power supply, which should be positioned in your workspace with adequate clearance (approximately 4 inches or more on either side, and 5 inches to the rear) for cable access and ventilation. Do not place anything on top of the power supply case.

In the event the system is to be installed in a high dust environment, the use of a fan filter kit (101-063-614) is required.

See [Figure 5.4 Power Supply Dimensional Drawing](#) for a dimensional drawing of the 2000Xc Power Supply.

The cable lengths are limited based on the operating frequency of the welding system. Performance and results can suffer if the RF cable is crushed, pinched, damaged or modified. Contact your Branson Representative if you have special cable requirements.


5.5.4 Input Power (Main)

The system requires single-phase input power, which you connect to the power supply using the integral power cord. See [5.4.2 Electrical Input Power Ratings](#) for plug and receptacle requirements for your specific power level.

Refer to the unit's Model Data Tag to be sure of the power rating of the Model in your system.

5.5.5 Output Power (RF Cable)

Ultrasonic Energy is delivered to a screw-on MS receptacle connection on the rear of the power supply, which is connected to the actuator or the converter (depending on your application).

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Never operate the System with the RF Cable disconnected or if the RF Cable is damaged. |

5.5.6 Interconnect between Power Supply and Actuator

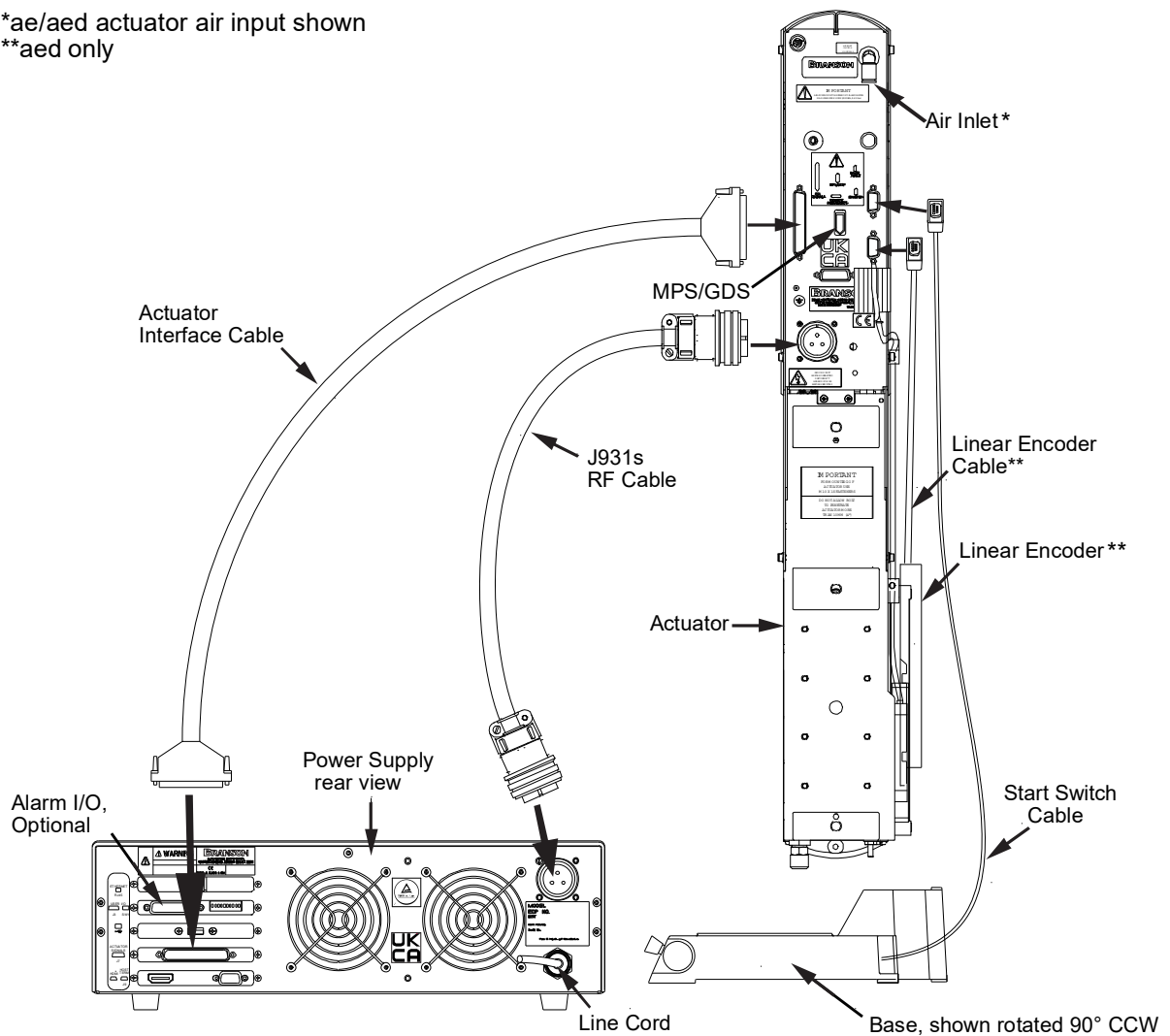
The Branson 2000Xc Actuator has two electrical connections between the power supply and the actuator: the RF cable and the actuator interface cable. A 37-pin actuator interface cable is used for power and control signaling between the power supply and actuator. The cable connects to the rear of the power supply and the rear of the actuator.

There can be other connections to the actuator, and other connections to the power supply, but these are the only two standard connections, depicted in [Figure 5.9](#).

For ground detect use, to have ultrasonic energy turn off when the horn comes in contact with your electrically isolated fixture or anvil, it is necessary to install Branson cable EDP No. 100-246-630 from the MPS/GDS receptacle on the rear of the actuator to your isolated fixture/anvil in order to utilize this feature.

Figure 5.9 Electrical Connections from Power Supply to a 2000Xc-series Actuator

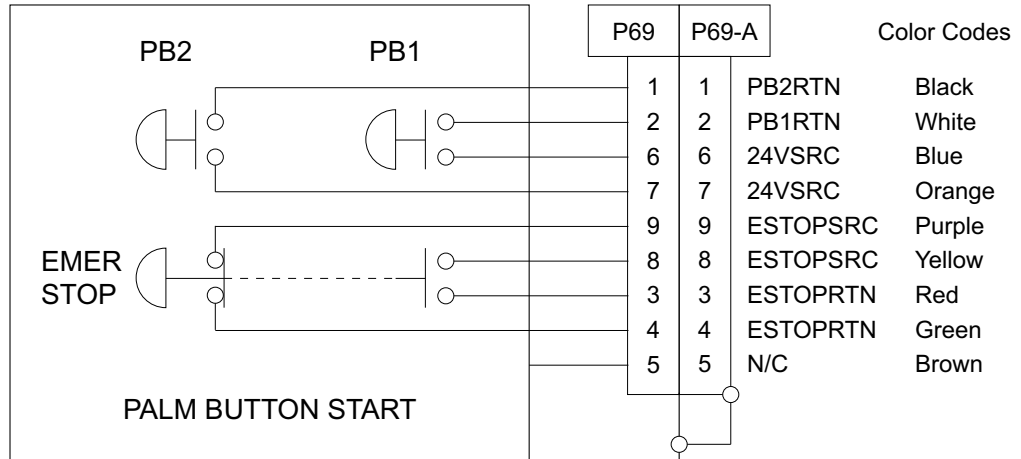
*ae/aed actuator air input shown
 **aed only




5.5.7 Start Switch Connection


A Branson actuator requires 2 start switches and emergency stop connection. Stands on a base include this connection (factory installed and connected from the base) while the stand on a hub and actuator (alone) applications require the user make their own start switch/E-stop connections, as follows:

Figure 5.10 Start Switch Connection Codes (CE Actuator)



EMER STOP is an emergency stop switch with two contacts: one normally closed, and one normally open.


| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Solid state devices may be used in lieu of mechanical start switches providing their leakage current does not exceed 0.1mA. |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Start Switches PB1 and PB2 must be closed within 200 milliseconds of each other, and remain closed until the PB Release signal is active, to effect a start condition. |

BASE/START is the DB-9 female connection on the back of the actuator. Your cable requires a male DB-9 (D-shell) connector.

PB1 and PB2 are two normally open start-switches which must be operated simultaneously to start the welding cycle. These must be closed within 200 milliseconds of each other, or error message: "Start Sw Time" will display. This doesn't require a reset,

but for the next cycle, switches must be within time limit to preclude re-occurrence of error message. Refer to Note above.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | If you wish to use alternate means to start the welder or as an emergency stop control, you must first have signed a Branson Product Liability Agreement. |

5.5.8 Serial (RS-232c) Port Connector

An RS-232c serial port (DB-9 format) is provided for the Host Computer option. Only three data leads of this port are supported at this time (Data Send TXD, Data Receive RXD, and Signal Ground GND). The remainder of the leads are 'reserved'. A null modem cable is required.

The comport parameters are fixed, can not be altered or viewed in the menu.

The fixed values are:

1. com speed = 9600 baud
2. no parity
3. 1 stop bit
4. 8 data bits

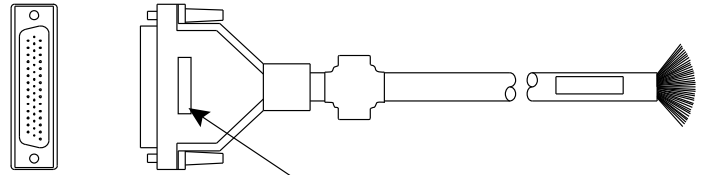
5.5.9 User I/O Interface

The user I/O is a standard user interface, provided on the power supply. It provides the ability for the customer to make their own interface for special control or reporting needs. The interface cable has an HD44 female D-shell connection on the rear of the power supply. The electrical interface outputs may be configured for open collector mode or for signal mode (signal voltage levels as indicated), by setting the user I/O DIP switch.

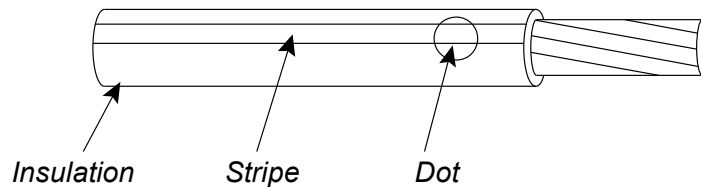
DIP switch SW1 for the user I/O is located next to the J3 on the back of the 2000Xc-series power supply. User I/O interface cable pinout is listed in [Table 5.5](#).


Figure 5.11 User I/O Cable Identification and Wire Color Diagram

*User I/O Cable
Stripped and tinned one end,
HD-44 male connector other end
(cable length as ordered)*



*Wire Color Diagram
Two Colors = Insulator/Stripe
Three Colors = Insulator/Stripe/Dot*



| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>All unused wires must be individually electrically isolated from each other. Failure to properly isolate or incorrect wiring can cause the system controller board to fail.</p> |



| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Ensure GND pins and +24 V pins are wired correctly. Failure to properly wire these pins will cause damage to the system controller board.</p> |

Table 5.5 User I/O Cable Pin Assignments

| Pin | Signal Name | Signal Type | Direction on J3 | Colors |
|-----|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1 | J3_1_INPUT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | White/Black |
| 2 | CYCLE_ABORT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | Red/Black |
| 3 | EXT_RESET | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | Green/Black |
| 4 | SOL_VALVE_SRC | +24 V | Output | Orange/Black |
| 5 | REJECT | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Blue/Black |
| 6 | G_ALARM | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Black/White |
| 7 | ACT_CLEAR | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Red/White |
| 8 | J3_8_OUTPUT | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Green/White |
| 9 | MEMORY | Analog | Output | Blue/White |
| 10 | USER_AMP_IN | Analog | Input | Black/Red |
| 11 | MEM_CLEAR | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | White/Red |
| 12 | GND | | | Orange/Red |
| 13 | +24V | | | Blue/Red |
| 14 | G_ALARM_RELAY_1 | Relay Contact | Output | Red/Green |
| 15 | READY_RELAY_2 | Relay Contact | Output | Orange/Green |
| 16 | SV1RTN | +24 V return | Input | Black/White/Red |
| 17 | J3_17_INPUT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | White/Black/Red |
| 18 | USER_EXT_SEEK+ | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | Red/Black/White |
| 19 | J3_19_INPUT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | Green/Black/White |
| 20 | SUSPECT | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Orange/Black/White |
| 21 | READY | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Blue/Black/White |
| 22 | J3_22_OUTPUT | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Black/Red/Green |
| 23 | 10V_REF | Analog | Output | White/Red/Green |
| 24 | AMPLITUDE_OUT | Analog | Output | Red/Black/Green |
| 25 | USER_FREQ_OFFSET | Analog | Input | Green/Black/Orange |
| 26 | RUN | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Orange/Black/Green |
| 27 | GND | | | Blue/White/Orange |
| 28 | +24V | | | Black/White/Orange |

Table 5.5 User I/O Cable Pin Assignments

| Pin | Signal Name | Signal Type | Direction on J3 | Colors |
|-----|-----------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 29 | G_ALARM_RELAY_2 | Relay Contact | Output | White/Red/Orange |
| 30 | WELD_ON_RELAY_1 | Relay Contact | Output | Orange/White/Blue |
| 31 | J3_31_INPUT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | White/Red/Blue |
| 32 | J3_32_INPUT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | Black/White/Green |
| 33 | J3_33_INPUT | 24 V Logic 1 True | Input | White/Black/Green |
| 34 | PB_RELEASE | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Red/White/Green |
| 35 | WELD_ON | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Green/White/Blue |
| 36 | J3_36_OUTPUT | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | Orange/Red/Green |
| 37 | PWR | Analog | Output | Blue/Red/Green |
| 38 | FREQ_OUT | Analog | Output | Black/White/Blue |
| 39 | SEEK | 24 V Logic 0 True | Output | White/Black/Blue |
| 40 | MEMORY_STORE | Open Collector (Active Low) | Output | Red/White/Blue |
| 41 | Analog GND | | | Green/Orange/Red |
| 42 | +24V | | | Orange/Red/Blue |
| 43 | READY_RELAY_1 | Relay Contact | Output | Blue/Orange/Red |
| 44 | WELD_ON_RELAY | Relay Contact | Output | Black/Orange/Red |

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Ensure all unused wires are properly isolated. Failure to do so may result in power supply or system failure.</p> |


| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When syncing multiple systems, refer to the Branson Automation Guide (EDP 100-214-273) for additional information about selection and use of Input and Output features listed in the following Table.</p> |

Table 5.6 Inputs/Outputs

| Input | | Output | |
|-------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| | Disabled | | Disabled |
| | Select Preset | | Confirm Preset |
| | Ext U/S Delay | | Ext Beeper |
| J3_1_INPUT | Display Lock | | Cycle OK |
| J3_17_INPUT | Ext Signal | J3_8_OUTPUT | No Cycle Alarm |
| J3_19_INPUT | Sonics Disable | J3_22_OUTPUT | Overload alarm |
| J3_31_INPUT | Memory Reset | J3_36_OUTPUT | Modified Alarm |
| J3_32_INPUT | Ext Tooling | | Note |
| J3_33_INPUT | Sync In | | Missing Part |
| | Part Present | | Ext Tooling |
| | Confirm Reject | | Sync Out |
| | | | Part-ID Ready |

5.5.10 Input Power Plug

If you must add or change the input power plug, use the following color code for the conductors found in the international harmonized line cord. Add the plug that is appropriate for your input power receptacle.


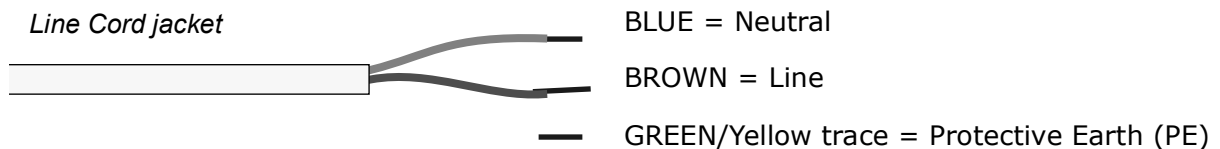
| WARNING | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The power supply can be permanently damaged if it is connected to the incorrect line voltage, or if the wiring connection is mis-wired. It also presents a safety hazard if mis-wired. Use of the correct plug or connector helps prevent incorrect connections.</p> |

Figure 5.12 International Harmonized Line Cord Color Code



5.5.11 User I/O DIP Switch (SW1)

DIP switch SW1, for the user I/O is located next to the J3 on the back of the 2000Xc Power Supply, as shown in [Figure 4.2 Rear View of 2000Xc Power Supply](#). The settings of these switches affect the user I/O signals. Factory default setting is for all dip switches is set to ON (closed: switch position closest to number designation).

- If the DIP switch is set to the ON (closed) position, the corresponding Output pin will be configured as the current source, 25mA max
- If the DIP switch is set to the OFF (open) position, the corresponding Output pin will be configured as an "open collector", 24VDC, 25 mA max. current sink

Table 5.7 User I/O DIP Switch Functions

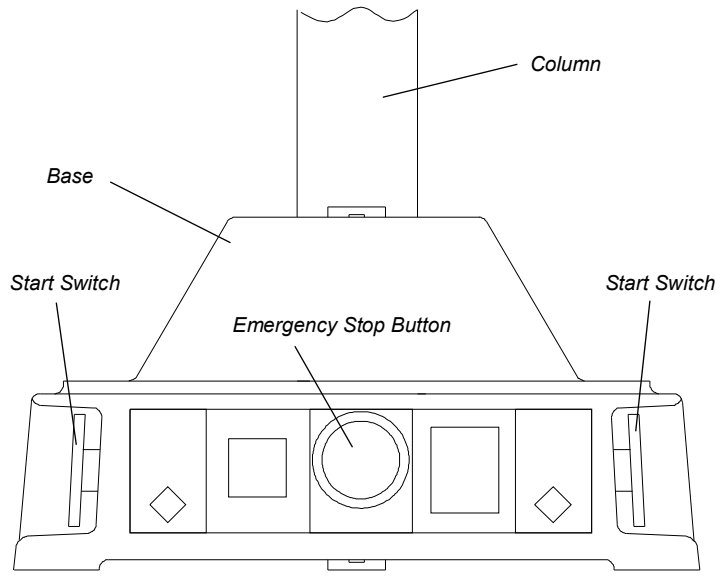
| Switch Position | Signal Description | Output Signal |
|-----------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 | REJECT_SIG | REJECT |
| 2 | SUSPECT_SIG | SUSPECT |
| 3 | PB_RELEASE_SIG | PB_RELEASE |
| 4 | G_ALARM_SIG | G_ALARM |
| 5 | READY_SIG | READY |
| 6 | WELD_ON_SIG | WELD_ON |
| 7 | ACTUATOR_CLEAR_SIG | ACT_CLEAR |
| 8 | J3_22_OUT_SIG | J3_22_OUTPUT |
| 9 | J3_36_OUT_SIG | J3_36_OUTPUT |
| 10 | J3_8_OUT_SIG | J3_8_OUTPUT |


5.6 Guards and Safety Equipment

5.6.1 Emergency Stop Control


If you use the emergency stop button on the actuator to terminate a weld, twist the button to reset it. (The welder will not operate until this button is reset) You must then press Reset at the power supply.

Figure 5.13 Actuator Emergency Stop Button



| WARNING | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The Emergency Stop should be engaged prior to removing the door.</p> |

- The 2000Xc Power Supply control system has been designed to conform to the safety requirements of NFPA 79, EN 60204-1, EN ISO 13851, EN ISO 13850, and CFR 1910.212.
- Two Hand Control of the 2000Xc Power Supply control system has been designed to comply with Type 3 of NFPA, Type III of EN 60204-1, and EN ISO 13851.
- The Emergency Stop functions as a category 0 stop of NFPA 79, EN ISO 13850, and EN 60204-1.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Emergency Stop function should be tested every 8760 hours.</p> |

5.7 Rack Mount Installation

If the system is Rack Mounted, you need to order the Rack Mount handle kit. The kit includes two rack mounting handles and two corner pieces, which support the handles and provide the rack mount interface.



| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The Rack Mount handle kit does NOT support the power supply in the rack. The weight of the power supply must be supported by integral brackets of the rack itself.</p> |
| NOTICE | |
|  | <p>Do not permanently remove the cover from the power supply because it is required for proper system cooling.</p> |

Figure 5.14 Detail of Rack Mount Handle Kit Assembly

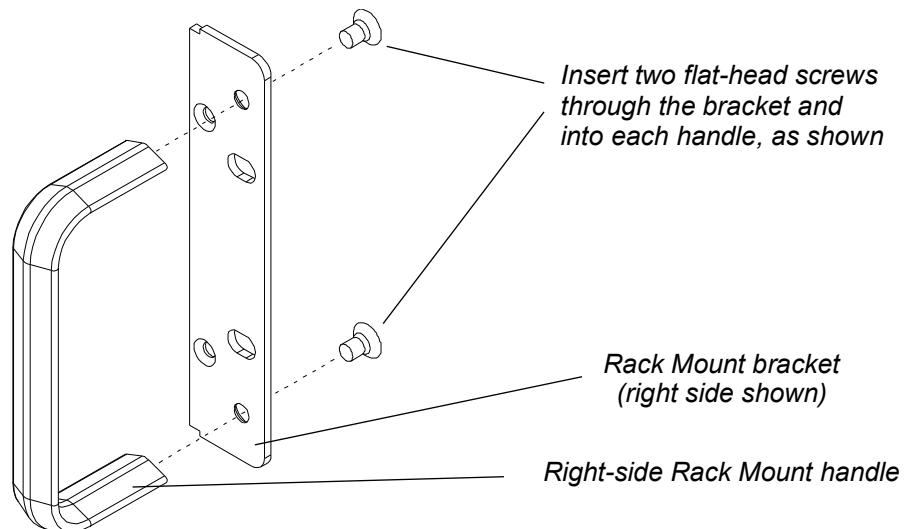



Table 5.8 Rack Mount Installation


| Step | Procedure |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Order and obtain the rack mount kit for your power supply. The brackets in the kit are designed for standard 19-inch rack mounting options. |
| 2 | From the front corners of the power supply, remove the corner trim pieces by removing the two Phillips screws. Save the screws. |

Table 5.8 Rack Mount Installation

| Step | Procedure |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Noting that one side of each bracket is countersunk to accept the provided flathead screws, assemble the Rack Mount Handles as shown in Figure 5.14 . (This shows only the Right bracket and handle; the left side is a mirror-image). Tighten the screws securely and so they are flush. |
| 4 | Re-using the screws you removed in Step 2, install the assembled Handle in place of the Front Corner pieces. |
| 5 | Save the removed hardware corner pieces. |
| 6 | When you are ready to install the unit, use the hardware from your Rack Mounting system to locate the power supply. |

5.8 Assemble the Acoustic Stack

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The following procedure must be performed by a setup person. If necessary, secure the largest portion of a square or rectangular horn in a soft jawed (brass or aluminum) vise. NEVER attempt to assemble or remove a horn by holding the converter housing or the booster clamp ring in a vise.</p> |

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Do not use silicone grease with Mylar washers. Use only 1 (one) Mylar washer of the correct inside and outside diameters at each interface.</p> |


| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>No Mylar washers for 40 kHz. Use silicone grease for 40 kHz.</p> |

Table 5.9 Tools, Grease and Mylar Washers

| Tool | EDP Number |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 20, and 30 kHz Torque Wrench Kit | 101-063-787 |
| 40 kHz Torque Wrench | 101-063-618 |
| 20 kHz Spanner Wrench | 101-118-039 |
| 30 kHz Spanner Wrench | 201-118-033 |
| 40 kHz Spanner Wrench | 201-118-024 |
| Silicone Grease | 101-053-002 |
| Kit 20 kHz, 10 each (1/2 in. and 3/8 in.) | 100-063-357 |
| Kit 20 kHz, 150 each (1/2 in.) | 100-063-471 |
| Kit 20 kHz, 150 each (3/8 in.) | 100-063-472 |
| Kit 30 kHz, 10 each (3/8 in., 30 kHz) | 100-063-632 |

5.8.1 For a 20 kHz System

Table 5.10 For a 20 kHz System

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Clean the mating surfaces of the converter, booster, and horn. Remove any foreign material from the threaded holes. |
| 2 | Install the threaded stud into the top of the booster. Torque to 450 in-lbs, 50.84 Nm. If the stud is dry, apply 1 or 2 drops of a light lubricating oil before installing. |
| 3 | Install the threaded stud into the top of the horn. Torque to 450 in-lbs, 50.84 Nm. If the stud is dry, apply 1 or 2 drops of a light lubricating oil before installing. |
| 4 | Install a single Mylar washer (matching the size of the washer to the stud) to each interface. |
| 5 | Assemble the converter to the booster and the booster to the horn. |
| 6 | Torque to 220 in-lbs, 24.85 Nm. (Torque 20 kHz Solid Mount Converter to 250 in-lbs, 28.25 Nm). |

5.8.2 For a 30 kHz System

Table 5.11 For a 30 kHz System

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Clean the mating surfaces of the converter, booster, and horn. Remove any foreign material from the threaded holes. |
| 2 | Apply a drop of Loctite®* 290 thread-locker (or equivalent) to the studs for the booster and horn. |
| 3 | Install the threaded stud into the top of the booster; torque to 290 in-lbs, 32.76 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes. |
| 4 | Install the threaded stud into the top of the horn; torque to 290 in-lbs, 32.76 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes. |
| 5 | Install a single Mylar washer (matching the size of the washer to the stud) to each interface. |
| 6 | Assemble the converter to the booster and the booster to the horn. |
| 7 | Torque to 185 in-lbs, 21 Nm. |

*Loctite is a registered trademark of Henkel Corporation, U.S.A.

5.8.3 For a 40 kHz System

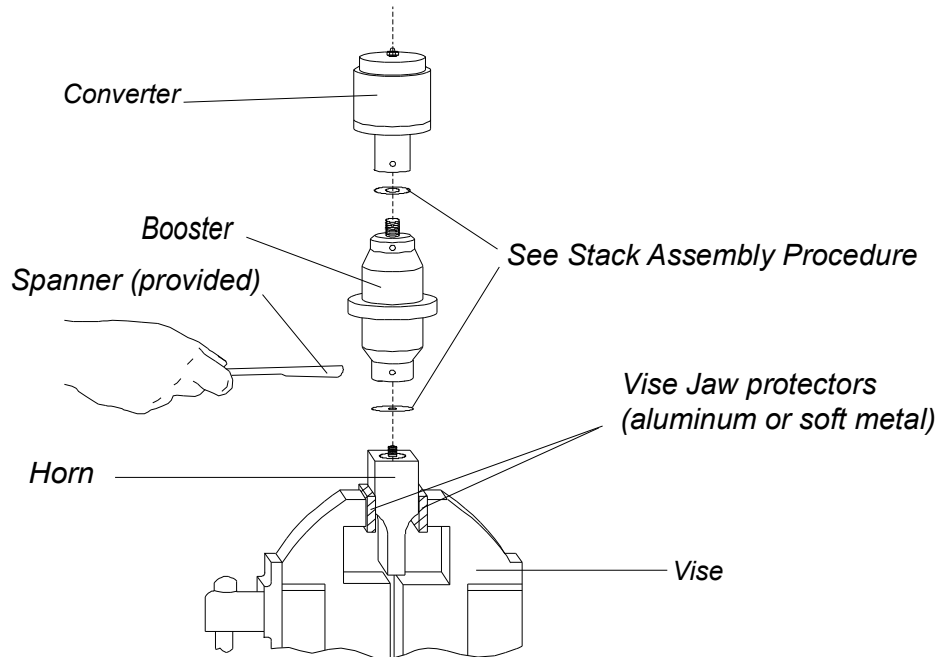
Table 5.12 For a 40 kHz System

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Clean the mating surfaces of the converter, booster, and horn. Remove any foreign material from the threaded holes. |
| 2 | Apply a drop of Loctite®* 290 thread-locker (or equivalent) to the studs for the booster and horn. |
| 3 | Install the threaded stud into the top of the booster; torque to 70 in-lbs, 7.91 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes. |
| 4 | Install the threaded stud into the top of the horn; torque to 70 in-lbs, 7.91 Nm, and let cure for 30 minutes. |
| 5 | Coat each interface surface with a thin film of silicon grease – but do not apply silicon grease to a threaded stud or tip. |
| 6 | Screw the converter to the booster. |
| 7 | Torque to 95 in-lbs, 10.73 Nm. |
| 8 | Slide the booster/horn assembly into the adapter sleeve. Screw on the adapter sleeve ring nut and leave loose. |
| 9 | Screw the booster onto the horn. |
| 10 | Repeat Step 7. |
| 11 | Securely tighten the adapter sleeve ring nut with the spanner wrenches shipped with the sleeve assembly. |

*Loctite is a registered trademark of Henkel Corporation, U.S.A.

5.8.4 Assembling the Acoustic Stack

Figure 5.15 Assembling the 20 kHz Acoustic Stack




| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The use of a Branson torque wrench or the equivalent is recommended. P/N 101-063-787 for 20, and 30 kHz systems and 101-063-618 for 40 kHz systems.</p> |

Table 5.13 Stud Torque Values

| Used On | Stud Size | Torque | EDP # |
|---------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 20 kHz | 1/2" x 20 x 1-1/4" | 450 in-lbs, 50.84 Nm. | 100-098-370 |
| 20 kHz | 1/2" x 20 x 1-1/2" | 450 in-lbs, 50.84 Nm. | 100-098-123 |
| 30 kHz* | 3/8" x 24 x 1" | 290 in-lbs, 32.76 Nm. | 100-298-170R |
| 40 kHz* | M8 x 1.25 | 70 in-lbs, 7.91 Nm. | 100-098-790 |

*Add a drop of Loctite 290 threadlocker to the stud. Torque and let cure for 30 minutes before use.

5.8.5 Connecting Tip to Horn

1. Clean the mating surfaces of the horn and tip. Remove foreign matter from the threaded stud and hole
2. Hand assemble the tip to the horn. Assemble dry. Do not use any silicone grease
3. Use the spanner wrench and an open-end wrench (refer to figure below) and tighten to the Torque tip specifications in [Table 5.14](#)

Figure 5.16 Connecting Tip to Horn

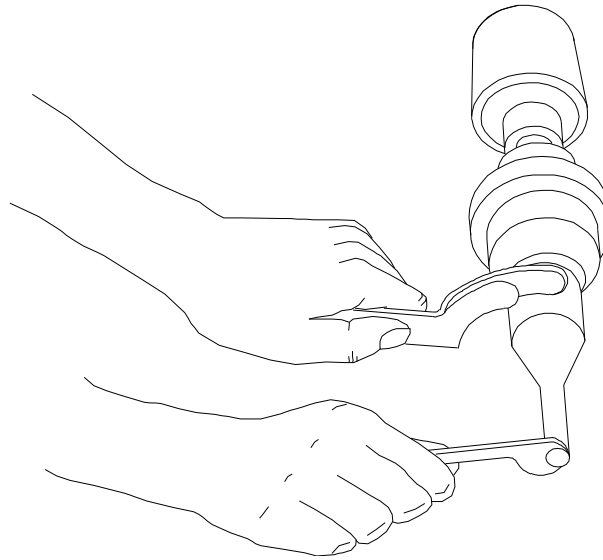


Table 5.14 Tip to Horn Torque Specifications


| Tip Thread | Torque |
|------------|-----------------------|
| 1/4 - 28 | 110 in-lbs, 12.42 Nm. |
| 3/8 - 24 | 180 in-lbs, 20.33 Nm. |

5.8.6 Installing the Ultrasonic Stack in the Actuator

20 kHz and 30 kHz Converter Stacks

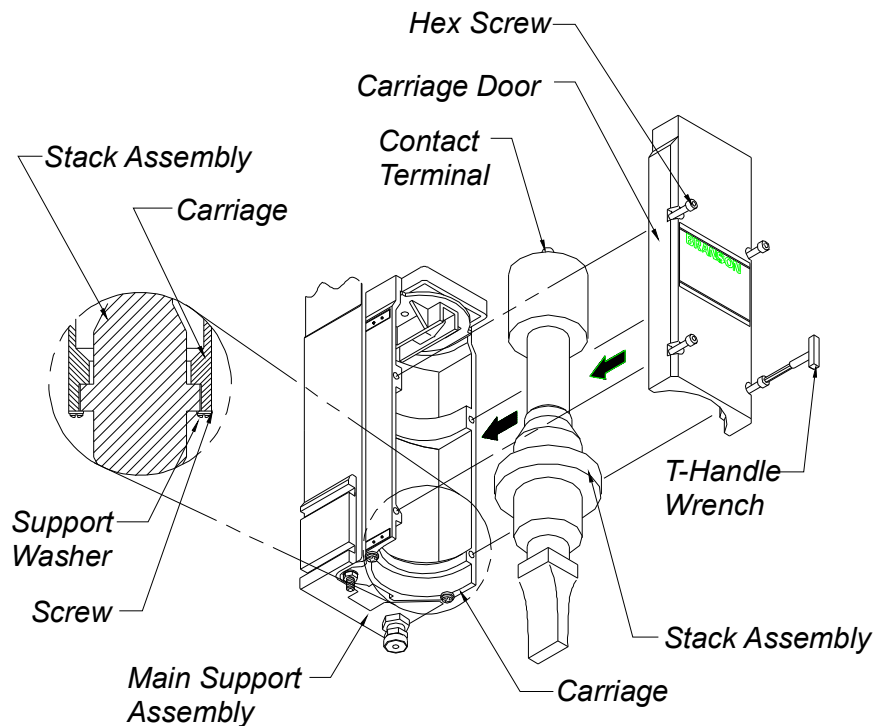
The ultrasonic stack must first be assembled. To install the stack:

1. Make sure that the system power is turned off by disconnecting the power plug
2. Engage the Emergency Stop
3. Loosen the four door screws of the actuator's door
4. Pull the door straight off and set it aside

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>It is recommended to do a risk assessment of the tooling according to its design to prevent any damage, such as dropping a heavy tooling, or cutting your hands, when installing the stack in the actuator.</p> |

5. Take the assembled ultrasonic stack and align the ring on the booster just above the support washer in the carriage. Firmly push the stack into place, with the acorn nut on the top of the converter making contact with the contactor in the top of the carriage
6. Reinstall the door assembly, and start the four door screws
7. Align the horn by rotating it, if necessary. Torque the carriage door to 20 in.-lbs to secure the stack

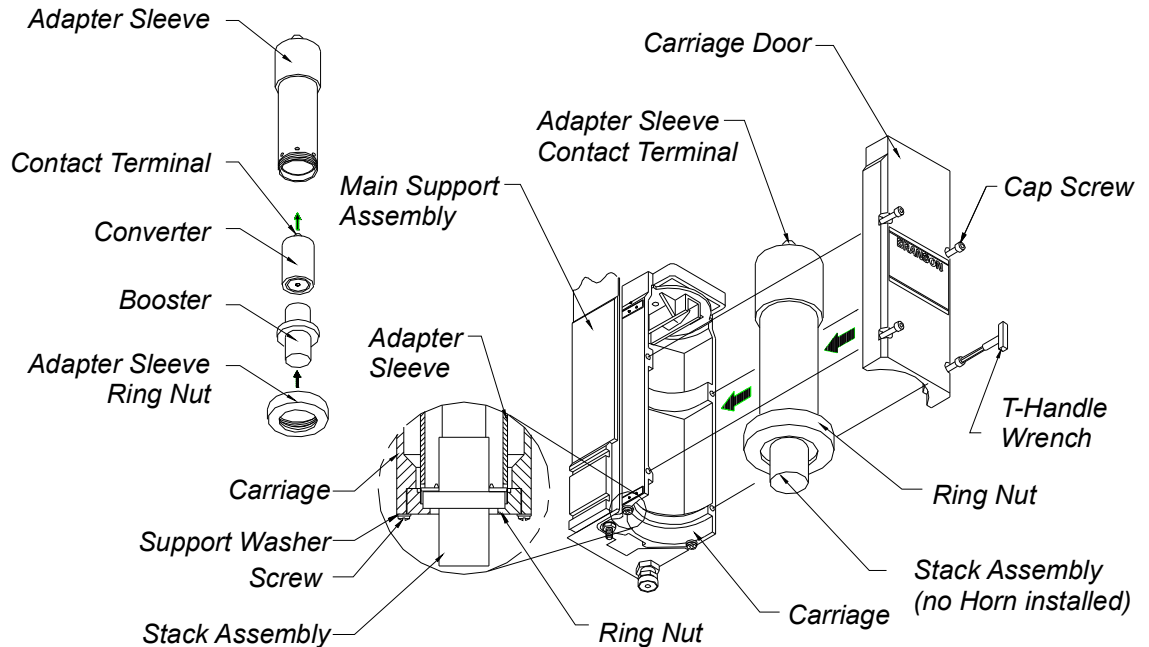
Figure 5.17 Installing a 20 kHz Stack in a Branson Actuator




40 kHz Converter Stacks

1. Make sure that the system power is turned off by disconnecting the power plug
2. Place the converter / booster in the sleeve
3. Loosen the four carriage door screws

Figure 5.18 Installing a 40 kHz Stack in a Branson Actuator



4. Pull the door straight off and set it aside.

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Do not attempt to hold the sleeve in a vise. It can be easily crushed or damaged.</p> |

5. Take the assembled sleeve and align the ring nut on the booster just above the support washer in the carriage. Firmly push the sleeve into place, with the acorn nut on the top of the converter making contact with the contactor in the top of the carriage
6. Reinstall the door assembly, and start the four door screws
7. Align the horn by rotating it, if necessary. Torque the carriage door to 20 in.-lbs to secure the stack

5.9 Mounting the Fixture on the Base

Hardware and mounting holes

The base provides mounting holes for your fixture. Mounting holes are also provided for the optional Branson leveling plate kit. The base is tapped for metric M10-1.5 hardware. The mounting holes are arranged in three concentric bolt circles with the following dimensions.


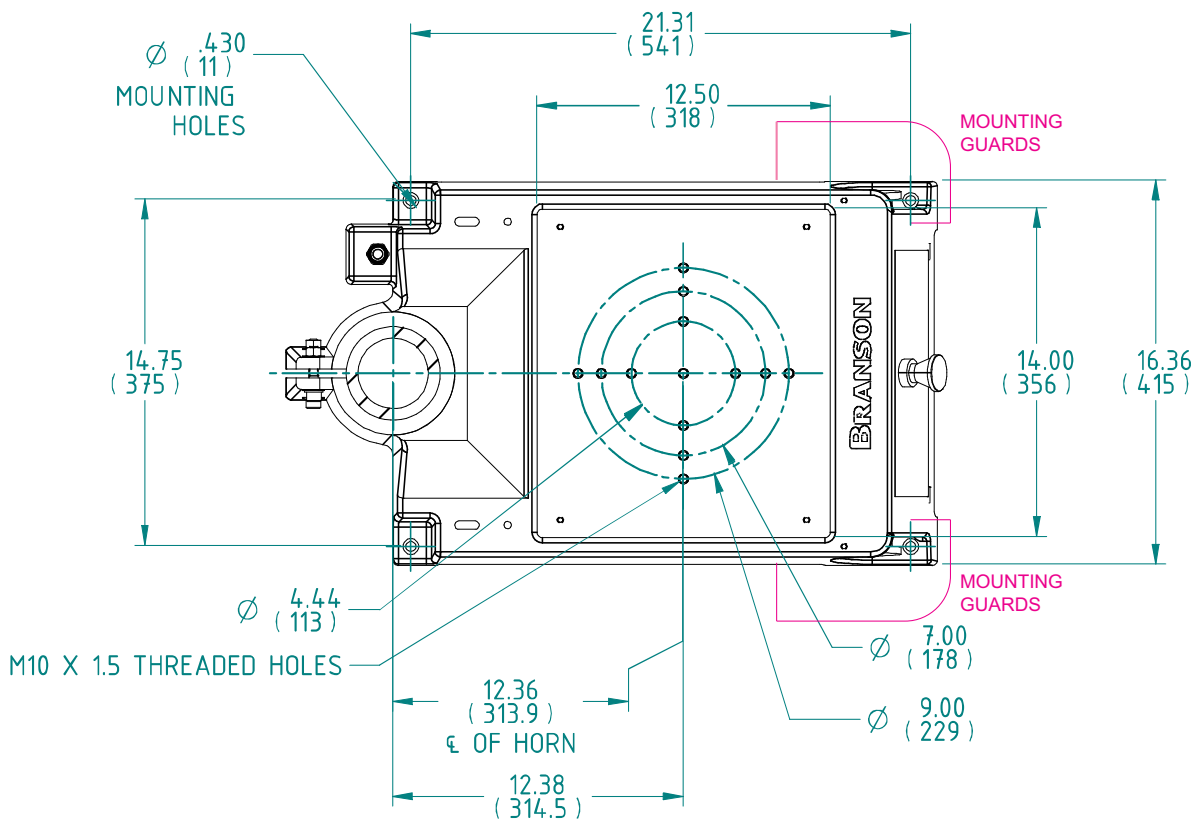
| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The base is cast metal and the mounting holes can become stripped if the hardware is overtightened. Tighten your hardware only enough to prevent movement of your fixture.</p> |

Figure 5.19 Mounting Holes on Base



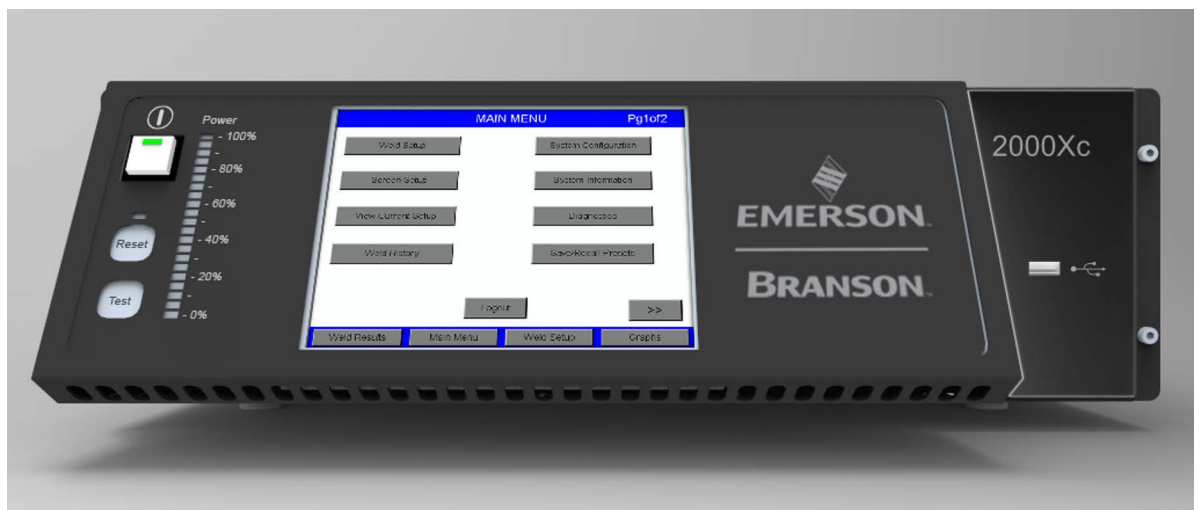
The optional guard, EDP 101-063-550, (sometimes required with very large horns) is shown for position only. It extends several inches to either side of the base, and prevents the user from operating the welder and pinching their fingers or hands between the base and the tooling.

5.10 Testing the Installation

1. Turn on the air supply connections including the pneumatic dump valve and verify that the air pressure indicator light in the actuator is lit.
2. Ensure there are no leaks in the air supply connections.
3. Turn on the power supply. The power supply will begin its normal self-check.
4. If the power supply displays an alarm message other than Recalibrate Actuator, find the alarm message definition, cause and correction in [Chapter 7: Actuator Operation](#). If the power supply displays the alarm message Recalibrate Actuator, go on to the next step.
5. Perform an actuator calibration by touching the Main Menu button, and then press the Calibration button. Verify that there is a minimum clearance from horn face to workpiece greater than 0.70".
6. Touch Cal Actuator.
7. In the screen that follows, touch w/Start Switches.
8. Press the Start switches to complete the calibration.
9. Press the Test button.
10. If the power supply displays an alarm message at this point, find the alarm message definition in [Appendix B: Alarms](#). If there are no alarm messages displayed, go on to the next step.
11. Fit a test part onto the fixture.
12. Touch Horn Down on the Main Menu and press the palm buttons. The horn will descend to the fixture on the base of the actuator. This verifies specifically that the pneumatic system is working.
13. Press the Retract button. The horn will retract. The system should now be functional and can be set up for your application.

In summary, if the power supply does not display an alarm message and descends and retracts correctly, your ultrasonic welder is ready for operation.

Figure 5.20 Front Panel Display




5.11 Still Need Help?


Branson is pleased that you chose our product and we are here for you! If you need parts or technical assistance with your 2000Xc Power Supply system, call your local Branson representative or contact Branson customer service by calling the appropriate department as indicated in [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#).


Chapter 6: Power Supply Operation

| | | |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 6.1 | 2000Xc Factory Default User and Password Setting | 99 |
| 6.2 | Operating System | 100 |
| 6.3 | Enable Remote Desktop Connectivity | 101 |
| 6.4 | 2000Xc Power Supply External Communication Functions | 104 |
| 6.5 | Front Panel Controls | 114 |
| 6.6 | Power-Up and Navigation of the 2000Xc Power Supply | 115 |
| 6.7 | Testing the Welding System | 117 |
| 6.8 | Weld Results | 118 |
| 6.9 | Main Menu | 119 |
| 6.10 | Weld Setup. | 120 |
| 6.11 | System Configuration | 136 |
| 6.12 | Screen Setup | 159 |
| 6.13 | System Information. | 161 |
| 6.14 | View Current Setup | 163 |
| 6.15 | Diagnostics | 164 |
| 6.16 | Horn Down | 170 |
| 6.17 | Weld History | 171 |
| 6.18 | Save/Recall Presets. | 172 |
| 6.19 | Sequencing Presets | 176 |
| 6.20 | Calibration | 178 |
| 6.21 | USB. | 181 |
| 6.22 | Alarm Log. | 183 |
| 6.23 | Event History | 184 |
| 6.24 | Login | 185 |
| 6.25 | Graphs | 188 |

| WARNING | High Voltage Hazard |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>High voltage is present in the 2000Xc Power Supply. When setting up and operating the welding system, observe the potential hazards listed below.</p> |

- Do not operate the power supply with the cover removed
- To prevent the possibility of electric shock, always plug the 2000Xc Power Supply into a grounded power source
- Keep hands out from under the horn. Down-force (pressure) and ultrasonic vibrations can cause injury
- Large plastic parts can vibrate within the audible frequency range when welded. If this occurs, use hearing protectors to prevent possible injury
- Do not press the Test switch or cycle the welding system if either the RF cable or the converter is disconnected. High voltage could be present at open power connections
- When using horns, avoid situations in which fingers could be pinched between the horn and the fixture
- Assure power switch is in the OFF position before making or breaking any electrical or pneumatic connections to the power supply, actuator or welder
- Do not touch Ultrasonic Horn during or immediately following the welding cycle. Vibrations and heat can burn skin

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Do not allow a vibrating horn to touch a metal base or metal fixture.</p> |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The power supply MUST be set to the correct cylinder size for the actuator to function properly.</p> <p>The regulator will click as it is regulating or maintaining a pressure setting. If there is excessive noise, the supply pressure to the regulator might be too low for the requested setting.</p> |


6.1 2000Xc Factory Default User and Password Setting


The 2000Xc is shipped with the following default user ID and password:

User: ADMIN

Password: 123456Aa#

The first time logging in you will need to enter this user ID and password. The system will ask you to create a new password for the user ADMIN after your first time log in.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
|  | Keep a record of your password and user ID. |

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
|  | Create multiple Executive level users for backup. |

6.2 Operating System

The 2000Xc Power Supply uses an embedded Single Board Computer (SBC) to offer advanced user interface functions. It uses Windows 10 IoT Enterprise LTSC as its operating system.

6.2.1 UWF Configuration Utility

The 2000Xc Power Supply SBC uses a solid state drive. It allows the Windows 10 IoT Enterprise LTSC to boot.

To protect the application and the operating system, Windows 10 IoT Enterprise LTSC employs Windows Unified Write Filter. This filter uses a RAM overlay to record changes to the Solid State Drive. Any changes made to the C: drive are lost during a power cycle. Only the C:\Branson folder remains unprotected allowing the 2000Xc Power Supply application to write directly to the Storage Drive in order to save presets, sequences, setup parameters and log files.

The UWF must be disabled before modifying the Windows 10 IoT Enterprise LTSC configuration. Changes made to Windows configuration such as Local Area Network configuration will be lost if the UWF has not been previously disabled. Once all changes have been saved, the UWF must be re-enabled before resuming controller operations. Contact customer support if this becomes necessary ([1.4 How to Contact Branson](#)).

Figure 6.1 UWF Configuration Utility

```
=====
UWF Management Menu
=====

1. Enable Disk Protection
2. Disable Disk Protection
3. Add a File/Folder to the Exemption List
4. Remove a File/Folder from the Exemption List
5. Exit

Enter option number:
```

6.3 Enable Remote Desktop Connectivity

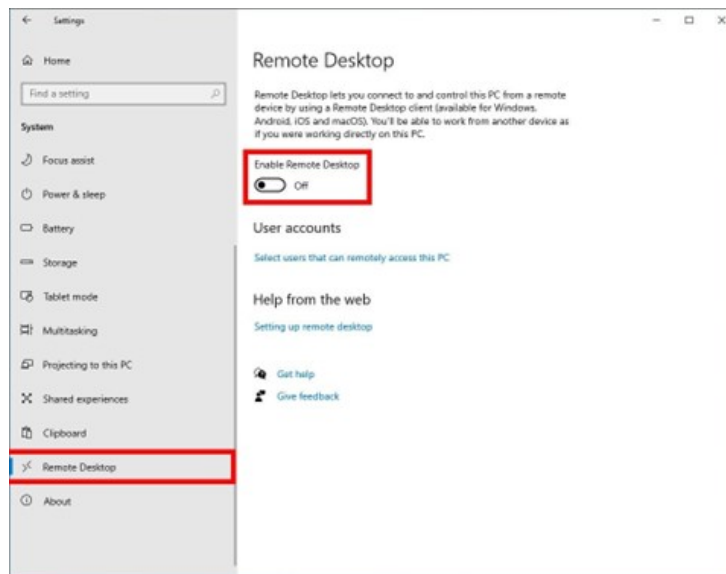
6.3.1 To Enable Remote Desktop Connectivity

Launch Control Panel > System and Security > System.

Go to the left panel and click on Remote Desktop.

Set Enable Remote Desktop to on.

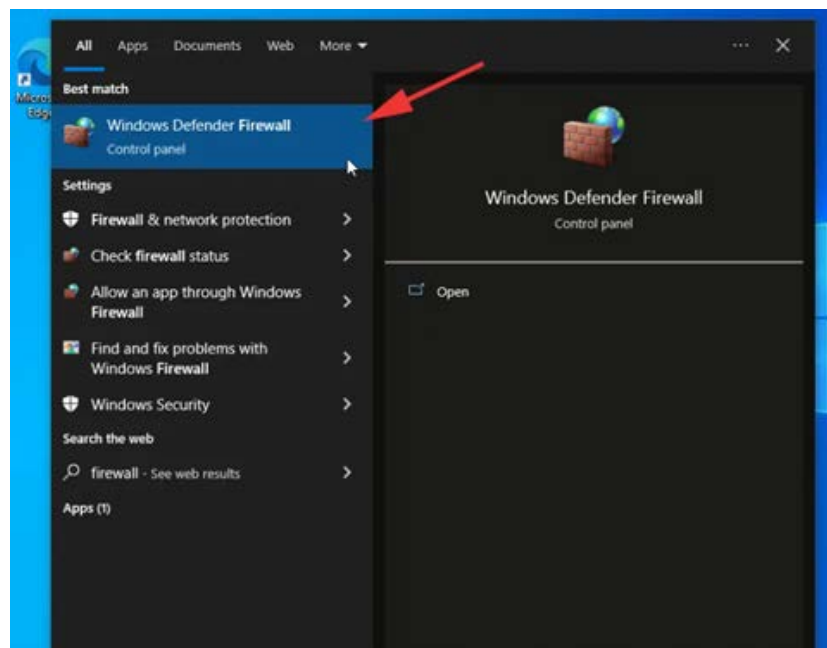
Figure 6.2 Remote Desktop Panel



6.3.2 Allow Remote Desktop through Firewall

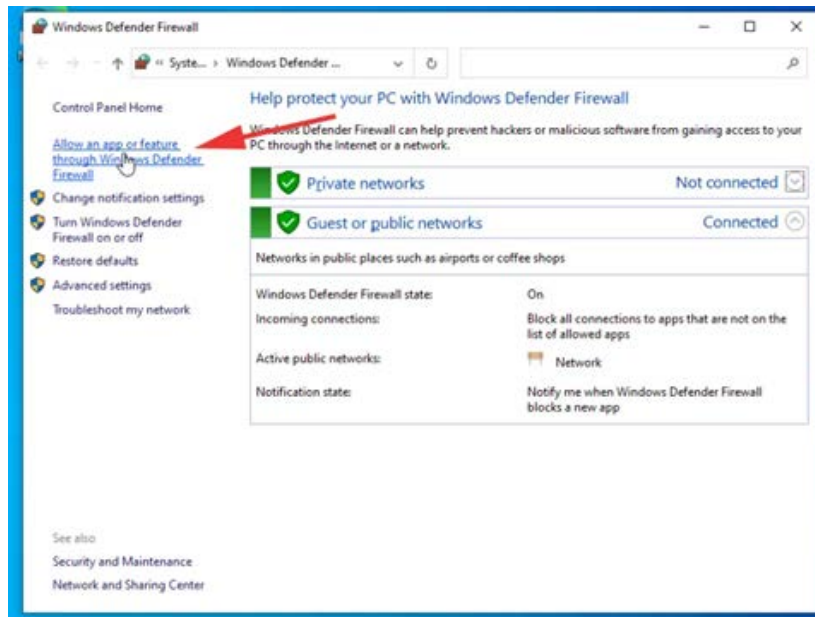
Click on Windows Start icon and type "Windows Firewall" and then click on the suggested option.

Figure 6.3 Windows Defender Firewall



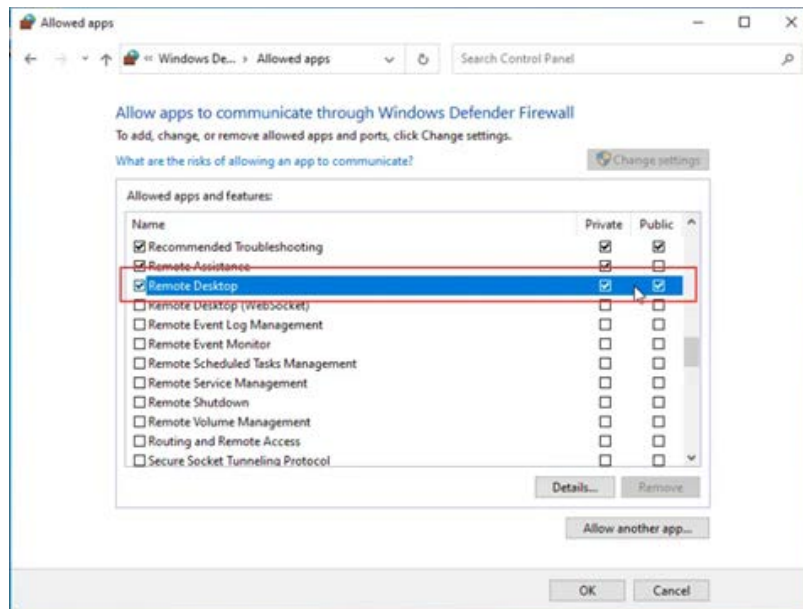
In the new window, click on "Allow an app or feature through Windows Defender Firewall".

Figure 6.4 Allow an app or feature through Windows Defender Firewall



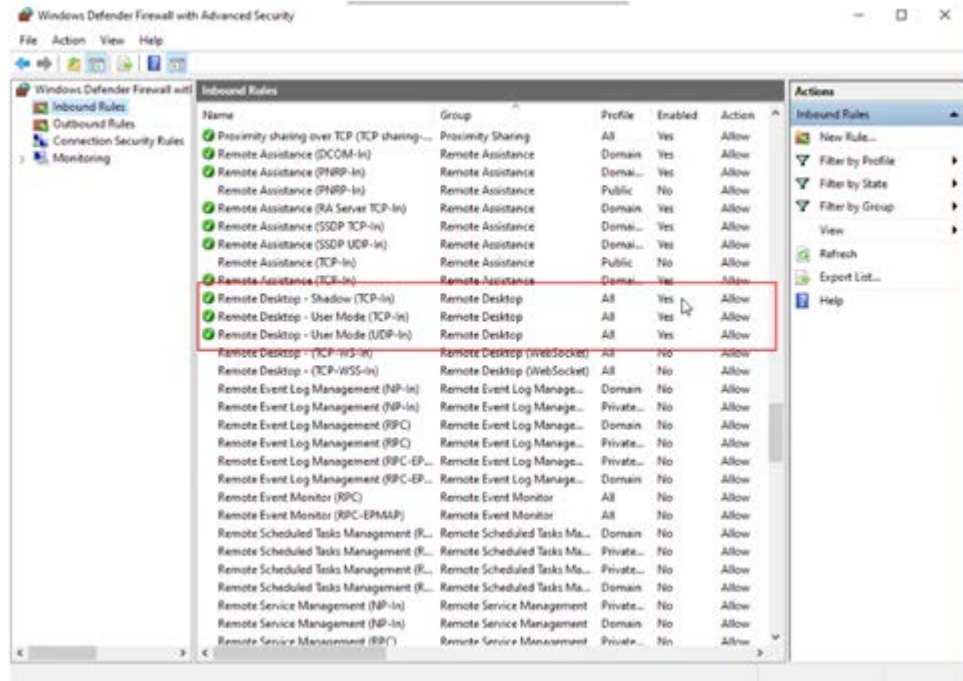
In the list of services, find "Remote Desktop", and set the checkbox to an enabled state.

Figure 6.5 Enable Remote Desktop



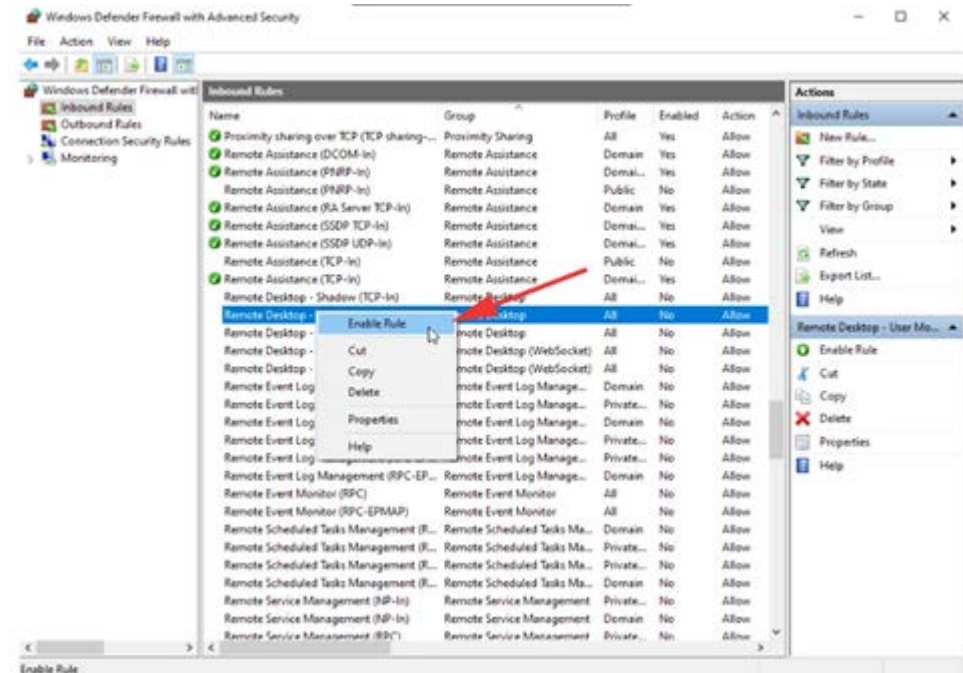
You can also go to the list of all incoming connection rules and in the list of rules find the rules related to "Remote Desktop (TCP/UDP-In)". Make sure that these rules are marked with a green checkmark and the Enabled state shows "Yes".

Figure 6.6 List of Rules



In case they are disabled, you should select the rule or right-click on several rules and enable the "Enable Rule" button.

Figure 6.7 Enable Rule button




6.4 2000Xc Power Supply External Communication Functions

6.4.1 2000Xc Remote Desktop Communication

With Remote Desktop Connection, you can connect the 2000Xc P/S with a Windows based computer that's connected to the same network and it allows the user to remotely monitor and control the operation of the welder.

Two options are available for networking the welder:

- In many companies, a computer network already exists. In this case, a network Ethernet drop can be installed near the welder. You will need to use a shielded Ethernet cable to connect the welder (the port is on the back of the power supply) to the network

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If there is a firewall on the network, you will only be allowed to view the welder within the network unless the company's IT department grants the computer outside the network access.</p> |

- If a network does not exist or if a direct link to a single PC is desired, you can use an Ethernet cable to link the welder to a Point-to-Point connection

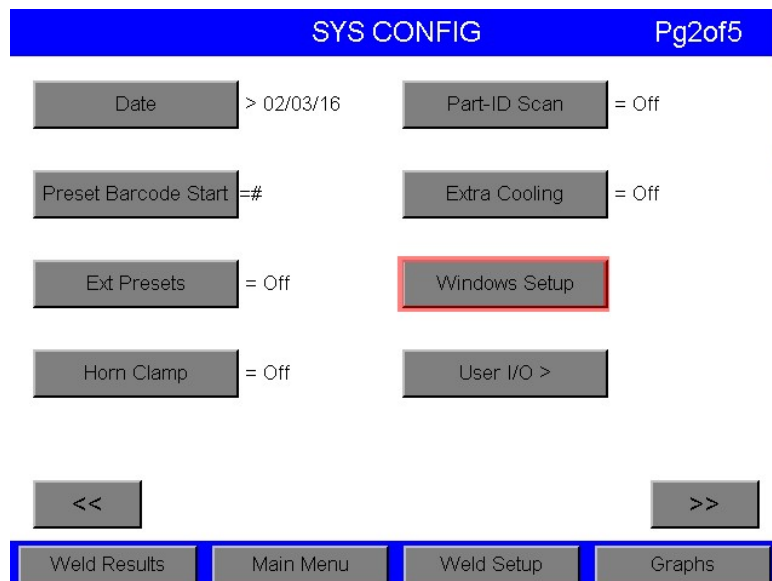
Before you begin the setup, you will need the following:

- A USB mouse and keyboard for the welder
- A shielded Ethernet cable for connecting to the network

6.4.1.1 Windows Setup

From the System Configuration menu, select Windows Setup.


Figure 6.8 System Configuration Menu



6.4.1.2 Disabling the UWF Manager

1. Open the UWF Manager. Click on Windows → File Explorer → C:\ UWF Configuration Utility\UWF Configuration Utility.exe → right click → Run as Administrator.
2. Select option 2.
3. Wait for SBC to reboot.

6.4.1.3 IP Address Setup

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>A mouse and keyboard connected to the USB port is necessary to navigate through the next several steps.</p> |

Network Connection

The following procedure is for connecting to a network.

1. Connect the welder to the network by inserting the shielded Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the back of the power supply and the network drop
2. Select Windows setup screen from the 2000Xc controller
3. From the Windows screen select: Start → Control Panel → Network and Internet → Network and Sharing Center → Change Adapter Settings
4. Double click on "Ethernet". Click Properties
5. Under Internet Protocol (TCP/IP), set to obtain an IP automatically.
6. Now you are ready to begin the communication setup

Point to Point Connection with a Cross-Over Ethernet Cable

If a network does not exist, a shielded Ethernet cable can be used for a point to point connection between a computer and the 2000Xc Power Supply. The connection can be made using a crossover Ethernet Cable.

1. Select Windows setup screen from the 2000Xc controller
2. From the Windows screen select: Start → Control Panel → Network and Internet → Network and Sharing Center → Change Adapter Settings
3. Double click on "Ethernet". Click Properties
4. Under Internet Protocol (TCP/IP V4), set the following IP address manually
5. Set your IP address

For point to point connection use a setting for the P/S, for example:

IP: 192.168.10.100

Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Gateway: 192.168.10.1

In this case, your computer will need the following setting:

IP: 192.168.10.101


Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Gateway: 192.168.10.1

6. Select OK (twice).
7. Close this window by clicking on the "X" on the upper right corner

6.4.1.4 Re-enabling the UWF Manager

1. Open the UWF Manager. Click on Windows → File Explorer → C:\UWF Configuration Utility\UWF Configuration Utility.exe → Right Click → Run as Administrator.
2. Select option 3.
3. Enter C:\Branson.
4. Select option 3 again.
5. Enter C:\Branson\SystemConfig.cfg
6. Select option 1.
7. Wait for SBC to reboot.

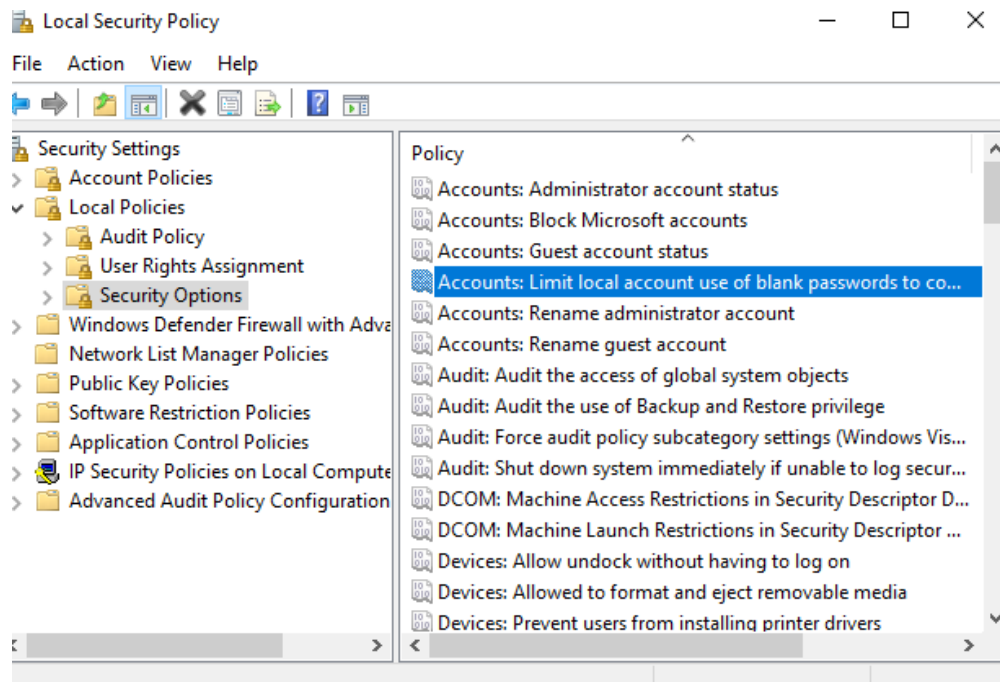
| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The power supply needs to be restarted for new IP to take effect. |

6.4.2 Branson Remote Desktop Setup (without front display access)

The following procedure is for connecting to a network or point to point connection.

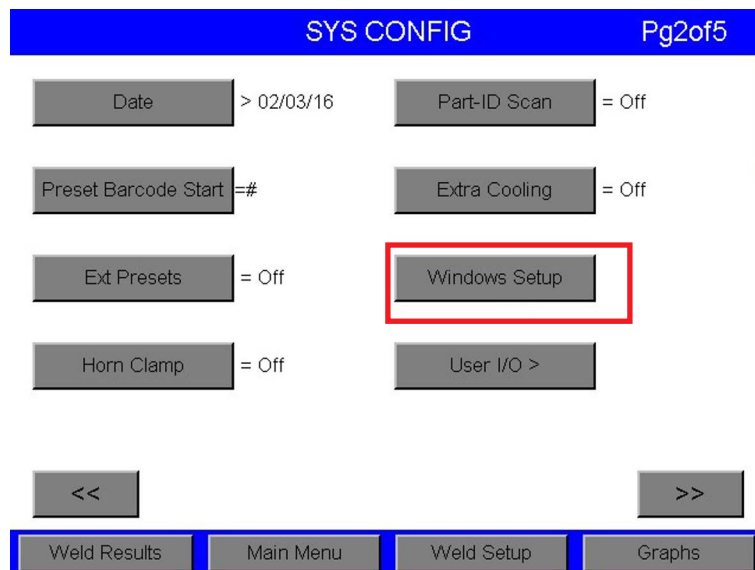
1. Please disable the UWF (Section [6.4.1.1 Windows Setup](#) to section [6.4.1.2 Disabling the UWF Manager](#)).
2. Connect the welder to the network by inserting the shielded Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port on the back of the power supply and the network drop, or if a network does not exist, the shielded Ethernet cable can be used for a point to point connection between a computer and the 2000Xc Power Supply.
3. From the System Configuration menu, select Windows Setup.
4. Go to Start → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Local Security Policy → Local Policies → Security Options → Accounts: Limit local account use of blank passwords to console logon only and set the option to Disabled, and you will be able to remote desktop without the need for a password.

Figure 6.9 Local Security Setting



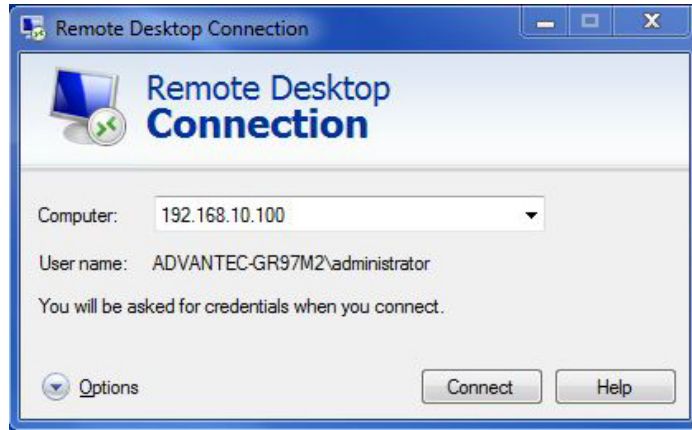
5. Reboot the P/S. The P/S will start up in the Main Menu Screen. Go to page 2 of the menu and click on Windows Setup to go back to Windows.

Figure 6.10 Windows Setup



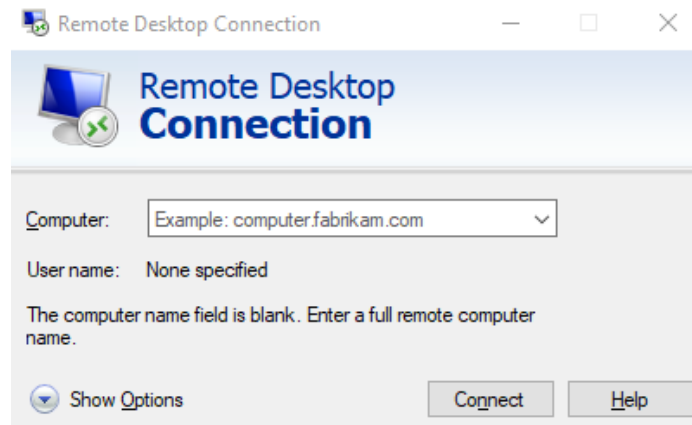
6. Enable the UWF. See [6.4.1.4 Re-enabling the UWF Manager](#).
7. On the computer, click on Start → All Programs → Accessories → Remote Desktop connection, enter the welder IP address in the Server box, click OK. See [Figure 6.11 Server Box](#).

Figure 6.11 Server Box



8. Log on as administrator (without password).
9. The computer is now directly linked to the welder. You are now equipped to monitor the actions on the welder or control the welder from the PC. You can perform any function on the welder with the exception of initiating a cycle. You can actually have multiple PC linked to the welder simultaneously.


Figure 6.12 Remote Desktop Connection



6.4.3 Branson Remote Desktop Setup (with Front Display Access)

Remote Access does not allow to activate the P/S front display by default.

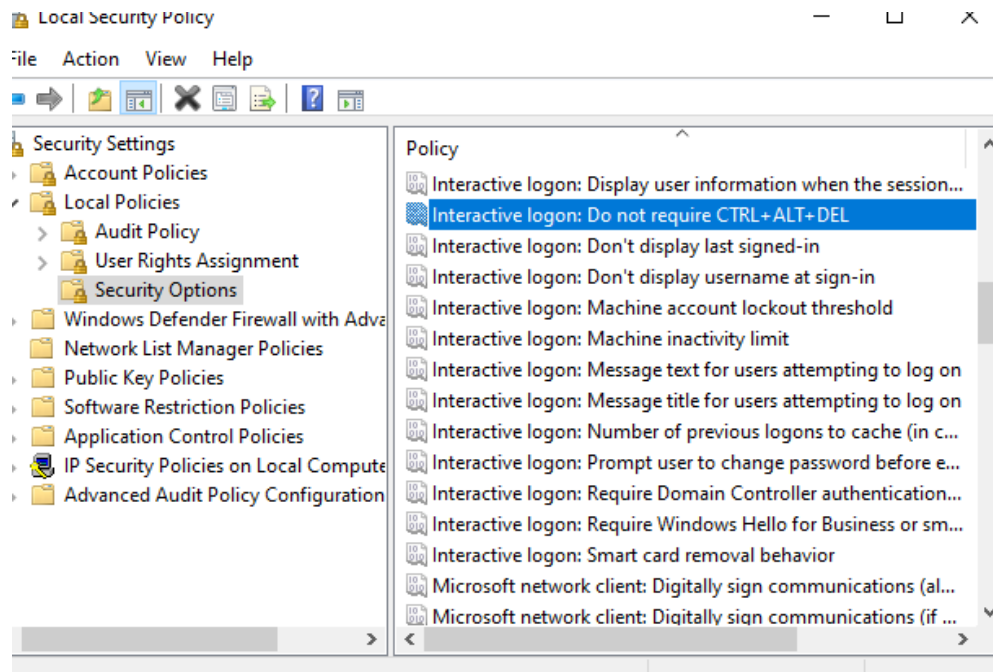
In case the customer requires to be able to use the P/S front display without restarting the P/S, then the security setting needs to be changed.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>This change reduces the security of the system!</p> |

1. Please disable the FBWF (Section [6.4.1.1 Windows Setup](#) to Section [6.4.1.2 Disabling the UWF Manager](#)).

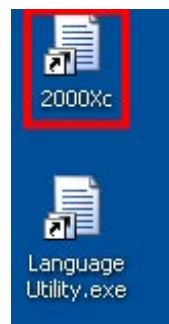
- Go to Start → Control Panel → Administrative Tools → Local Security Policy → Local Policies → Security Options → interactive logon: Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL and set the option to Enabled. Click OK.

Figure 6.13 Enable “Do not require CTRL + ALT + DEL”



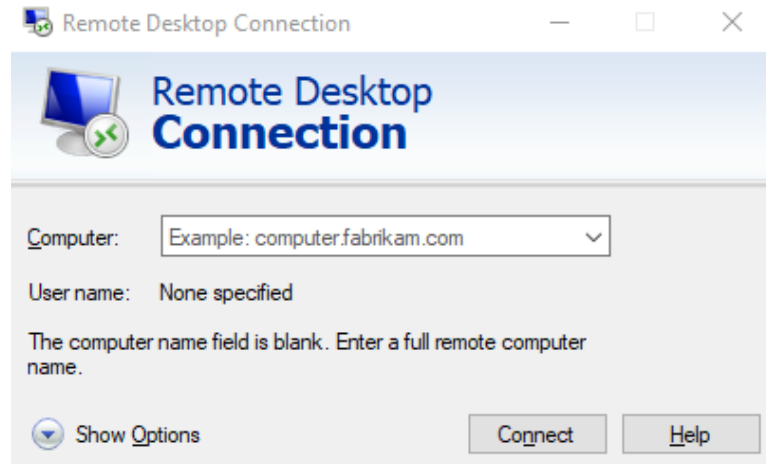
- Start the “2000Xc” software on the desktop

Figure 6.14 2000Xc File on the desktop



- Restart the P/S.
- Please enable the FBWF ([6.4.1.4 Re-enabling the UWF Manager](#)).
- If the remote access is active, the P/S front display shows the log on window. If you log on as administrator (without password), the remote access will be denied and the front display has the full access again.

Figure 6.15 Remote Desktop Connection



6.4.4 USB

The two USB ports available on the 2000Xc Power Supply are USB 2.0 compliant, allowing complete plug and play, and hot attach/detach for up to 127 external devices. USB 2.0 is fully backward compatible with USB 1.1, supporting speeds of 1.5, 12 and 480 Mbps. For example, keyboard and mouse can be used with USB port at low speed, while USB memory stick will run at High-speed. Information can be transferred to a PC using the Branson History Utility to view and process information. This can be useful when weld history data requirements exceed the maximum of 100,000 weld history data that can be stored in the power supply.


When the maximum number of records allowed is reached, the Power Supply will display the message: "History Memory Full".

To download data and graphs, a memory stick must be inserted into the USB port (or hub). Then activate the communication through the touchscreen Main Menu:


Table 6.1 Download Data to USB

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Enter the System Configuration menu. Located on the first screen is the USB DATA button. |
| 2 | Once in this menu, you need to switch the USB to On. |
| 3 | Select the weld data or graphs you would like to download. When selecting these, the user has the option of either downloading after a weld cycle (and at what interval, i.e., 1, 5, 20, 100, etc.) and/or when an alarm takes place. |


The storage capacity of the memory stick will determine the number of cycles and graphs the stick can hold. The data space required for each weld cycle is: 1.0 KB for weld data and 1.35KB for each graph.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | It is important to remember to turn off the USB feature prior to removing the memory stick; an alarm will be generated if the stick is simply removed. |

To view the stored data on a PC you may use Branson's history utility program **2000Xc History.exe**. For more information, see [6.4.5 Branson 2000Xc History Utility](#).

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | If data is not being saved, confirm your USB stick is set to drive D. |

The USB port can also support barcode scanners. The barcode scanner must have a keyboard emulation mode. Barcode scanner can be used to recall presets and enter the part ID.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Do not start scanning with your barcode scanner until the Main menu or Weld Results screen is displayed.</p> |

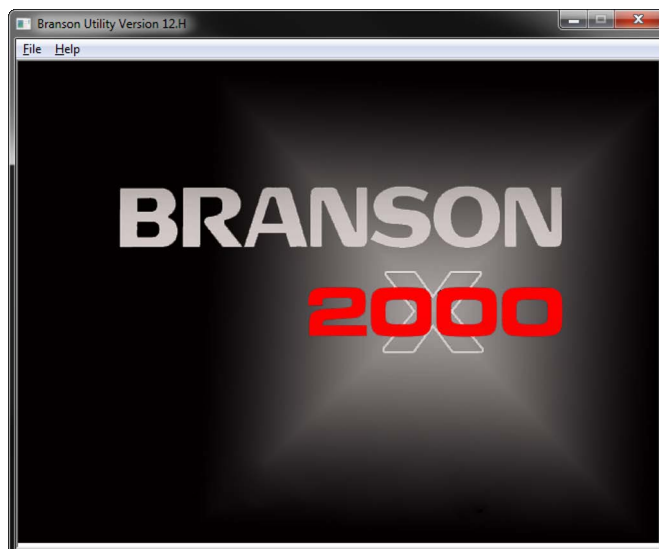
6.4.5 Branson 2000Xc History Utility


The Branson 2000Xc History Utility program is used to display weld history results from the 2000Xc Power Supply on a PC (see [6.4.4 USB](#) for more information).


Table 6.2 Branson 2000Xc History Utility

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Install 2000Xc History Utility program on a PC running Windows 7 or later. |
| 2 | Insert the USB memory stick into the PC. |
| 3 | Run the 2000Xc History Utility program. Click on "File", then select either "Open P/S folder" or "Open Horn Scan". The window will display the drives available to the PC. Click on the USB drive and select the folder named with the P/S serial number. The software loads the information and enables you to view data and graphs. |

Figure 6.16 History Utility



| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | From this utility you can also print weld data, graphs, and horn scan data. |

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The Branson 2000Xc History Utility can be downloaded here . |

6.4.6 External Monitor

A 15" touchscreen monitor is available from Branson (kit BU-1040854). This touchscreen monitor can be connected directly to the power supply. Contact your Branson sales representative for purchasing information (See [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#)).


6.5 Front Panel Controls

You use the color touchscreen on the front panel of the 2000Xc Power Supply to navigate through all of the menus, set welding values, and view alarms about the most recently completed weld.

You press the Reset Button when you encounter an alarm condition requiring that you reset the power supply before performing another operation.

You press the Test Button to verify the integrity of the system setup. If the power supply displays an alarm, find and address the alarm message definition in the Maintenance section of [Chapter 8: Maintenance](#) of this manual.

6.5.1 Front Panel Color Touchscreen

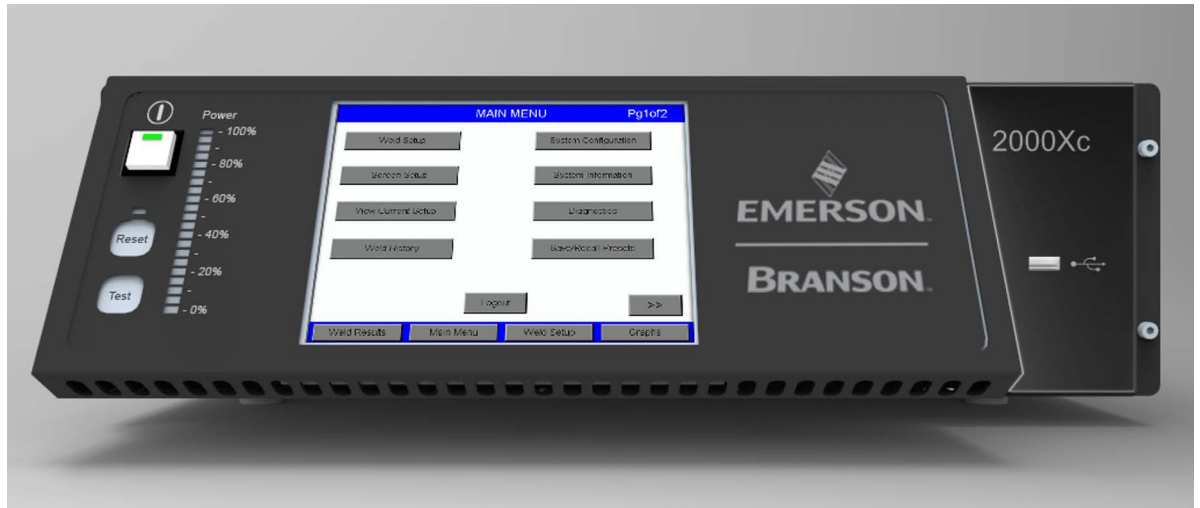
| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Do not use excessive force or a sharply pointed object to operate the touchscreen. |

You can perform the following navigational and operational functions on the power supply front panel touchscreen:

- Touching the Weld Results Button will display the Weld Results from 7 weld cycles to be monitored from the Weld Results screen
- Touching the Main Menu Button will display the Main Menu screen which access the Weld Setup, Screen Setup, View Current Setup, Weld History, System Configuration, System Information, Diagnostics, Save/Recall Presets, Sequencing Presets and USB options
- Touching the Weld Setup Button will display the Weld Setup screen which accesses the Weld Mode, and all Weld Parameters
- Touching the Graphs Button will display the View Graphs, Auto Scale, X Scale and Auto Refresh menu buttons
- Each of the preceding accessible buttons will provide the user with the appropriate navigation, parameter and choice options to control the operation of the power supply

6.6 Power-Up and Navigation of the 2000Xc Power Supply

Figure 6.17 Front Panel of the 2000Xc Power Supply




When powered up, the 2000Xc displays the BIOS start up screen for approximately 10 seconds before the Branson 2000X logo appears. A progress bar at the bottom of this screen shows the progress of the SBC configuration software loading. This finishes in about 25 seconds, and the screen goes blank for an additional 12 seconds while Windows OS is loading.

If Authority Check is on and Automation Mode is off, the Login screen will be displayed.

Located at the bottom of the Main Menu screen are the touchscren buttons that allow for the navigation and operation of the power supply. They are:

Table 6.3 Main Menu screen

| Main Menu | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Weld Results | Main Menu | Weld Setup | Graphs |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>You can return to any of these menus at any time by pressing the respective touchscren button.</p> |

6.6.0.1 Button Types

There are 3 types of "buttons".

Navigation Button: Touching this button will "depress" it and display a new Screen.

Toggle Parameter Button: Touching the button will change state, i.e. On/Off, +/-.

Choice Parameter Button: Generates a pop-up with all choices shown as buttons.

6.6.1 Keypad Operation

There are 2 modes of keypad operation, numeric and alphanumeric. Numeric operation is typically used for all pop-ups except Presets and Password entry. Presets can be either, Password setup (located under System Configuration menu) is usually alphanumeric.

6.6.1.1 Numeric Keypad

The numeric entry mode displays numbers in the New Value field of the respective parameter pop-up as they are touched on the keypad.

The digits are entered from left to right. If you are to enter 10 seconds in Time Mode, touch 1, then 0, and ENT. The value displayed will then be 10.000 seconds, reflecting the resolution for the respective parameter. This will be entered in the New Value field.

In numeric keypad mode, the INC and DEC buttons become inactive when a number digit is pressed.

Once the INC or DEC buttons are pressed, the number digits are inactive. The INC and DEC will increment or decrement the Current Value field by 1 each time it is pressed.

Touching ESC will erase all digits in the New Value field. If you are using INC and DEC to change values and touch ESC, you will be able to enter digits again without changing screens.

Touching ENT will close the pop-up and return you to the Weld Setup screen.

If the value to be entered is not within the minimum / maximum range shown in the pop-up, the min/max field will indicate an error by turning red and beep.

6.6.1.2 Alphanumeric Keypad

The alphanumeric keypad shows the following keys:

- **Alphanumeric keys:** All of the letters and numbers on the keyboard. A-Z and 0-9
- **Punctuation keys:** All of the keys associated with punctuation such as the comma, period, semicolon, brackets, parenthesis and so on. Also, all of the mathematical operators such as the plus sign, minus sign, and equal sign
- **Special keys:** All of the other keys on the computer keyboard such as the function keys, control keys, arrow keys, caps lock key, delete key, etc

6.7 Testing the Welding System


After the power supply is installed, you can confirm that the ultrasonic welding system is operational by following this test procedure using a sample part. This assumes that the installation has been set-up and tested per [Chapter 5: Installation and Setup](#) of this manual.

To test the Welding System after installation, do the following:

Table 6.4 Testing the Welding System

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | On the actuator column, adjust the stroke length to 1/4 inch or more, depending on the part you will use for the test run. Position the system to allow for a minimum stroke length of 1/4 inch or more. Lock column after adjusting. |
| 2 | Position the part in the tooling. |
| 3 | Verify that factory air supply has been connected to the actuator and turned on. (If using optional pneumatic dump valve, ensure it is turned on). |
| 4 | On the power supply front panel, press the power switch. The indicator light on the front of the actuator becomes illuminated. |
| 5 | The power supply will go through its normal turn on sequence. At the end of this sequence the Main Menu screen is displayed*. If the power supply displays an alarm message, find the alarm message definition, cause, and correction in Chapter 8: Maintenance of this manual. If the alarm message is Recalibrate Actuator, return to Chapter 5: Installation and Setup , and re-run the procedure in 5.10 Testing the Installation . |
| 6 | On the power supply touchscreen, press the Weld Setup button. Press the Trigger Force button. Set Trigger Force to 10 lbs. |
| 7 | On the power supply touchscreen, press the Weld Results key. |
| 8 | Activate both Start Switches simultaneously. |
| 9 | When the weld cycle is complete, and if the cycle has completed successfully, the cycle counter increments to show a completed cycle. If the Reset LED on the power supply front panel flashes and the second line displays an alarm message, the test did not complete successfully. See 8.6 Troubleshooting , for information on alarm conditions and how to correct them. |

*The default screen is Main Menu. The Weld Results screen can also be chosen as the startup screen on the System Configuration Menu.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If you power up and the actuator is not home, you will get two alarms. One is the Recal Actuator Alarm. Restore air to the system and power up again and a recal will not be needed.</p> |

6.8 Weld Results

Pressing the *Weld Results* button displays the cycle number and 4 user configurable parameters. The values are updated at the end of the weld cycle. The top of the screen displays the current running preset's name, current cycle state, and batch count parameter.

The format for the batch counter is XXXXXX/YYYYYY where XXXXXX is the number of weld happened in this batch and YYYYYY is the total number of welds in this batch.


Users can scan a part ID barcode and the system will associate the next weld with the scanned part ID. Users can also scan a preset barcode and the system will recall the required preset from the preset list according to the scan. If Part-ID Scan is enabled, the lower left button will display *Waiting For Part-ID Scan* until it has been received.

Figure 6.18 Weld Results

| WELD RESULTS | | | | |
|--------------|----------|------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Cycle # | Time (s) | Pk Pwr (%) | Part-ID Scan | Velocity (in/s) |
| 45725 | 0.500 | 55.4 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45724 | 0.500 | 55.4 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45723 | 0.500 | 55.5 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45722 | 0.500 | 55.5 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45721 | 0.500 | 55.6 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45720 | 0.500 | 55.5 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45719 | 0.500 | 55.5 | 191380 | 12.7 |
| 45718 | 0.500 | 55.4 | 191380 | 12.7 |

Waiting For Part-ID Scan Column Setup

Weld Results Main Menu Weld Setup Graphs

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Part ID can be up to 18 characters in length. If a part ID is longer, the system will truncate it. When displaying the part ID in a column on the Weld Results screen, only the first 10 characters will be shown.</p> |

When the maximum number of records allowed is reached, the Power Supply will display the message: "History Memory Full".

6.9 Main Menu

Pressing the *Main Menu* button displays the Main Menu screens. The following choices are available on the Main Menu:

Table 6.5 Main Menu, Page 1

| Main Menu | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Weld Setup | System Configuration |
| Screen Setup | System Information |
| View Current Setup | Diagnostics |
| Horn Down | Weld History |

Table 6.6 Main Menu, Page 2

| Main Menu | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Save/Recall Presets | Sequencing Presets |
| Calibration | USB |
| Alarm Log | Event History |
| Login | |

6.10 Weld Setup

The Weld Setup Menu allows you to select and set all the parameters necessary to successfully operate in any available mode. The following parameters are available in Weld Setup.

Table 6.7 Weld Setup, Page 1

| Weld Setup | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Weld Modes | Trigger |
| Trigger Force Trigger Distance | Weld Time , Weld Energy , Peak Power , Collapse , Absolute , Scrub Time |
| Amplitude Step Scrub Amplitude | Hold Time |
| Amplitude | Step Pressure |

Table 6.8 Weld Setup, Page 2

| Weld Setup | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Weld Pressure | Downspeed |
| Rapid Traverse | Hold Pressure |
| Pretrigger | Save/Recall Presets |
| Write In Field | Batch Setup |

Table 6.9 Weld Setup, Page 3

| Weld Setup | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Afterburst | Control Limits |
| Act Clr Output | Cycle Aborts |
| Pressure Limit | Power Match Curve |
| Ext U/S Delay | Digital UPS |

Table 6.10 Weld Setup, Page 4

| Weld Setup | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Post Weld Seek | Reject Limits |
| Energy Brake | Suspect Limits |
| Frequency Offset | Downspeed Tuning |
| Timeout | Setup Limits |


6.10.1 Weld Modes

After analyzing your specific application, you can determine the Weld Mode to use to weld your parts. A Weld Mode is a set of parameters that governs the weld. (Contact the Branson Ultrasonics Applications Laboratory for more information on determining the best mode for welding your application. See [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#)).

There are six Weld Modes to choose from Time, Energy, Peak Power, Collapse Distance, Absolute Distance, and Ground Detect Modes.

Table 6.11 Weld Modes

| Weld Modes | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Time | Energy* |
| Peak Power* | Collapse Distance* |
| Absolute Distance* | Ground Detect* |

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
|  | *In these modes, timeout can be used for control limits. |

6.10.1.1 Time

You can use Time Mode to select the length of time (in seconds) that ultrasonic energy is applied to your parts. Within Time Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits.

6.10.1.2 Energy

You can use Energy Mode to select the amount of ultrasonic energy (in Joules) that is applied to your parts. Within Energy Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits.

6.10.1.3 Peak Power

You can use Peak Power Mode to select the maximum percentage or watts of the total available power that will be used to process your welds. When the power level you set is reached, ultrasonics will be terminated. From within Peak Power Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits.

6.10.1.4 Collapse Distance

You can use the Collapse Distance Mode to select the distance (in inches or milliliters) your part will be collapsed before ultrasonic energy is terminated. This distance parameter can be set when in Collapse Mode to establish Suspect and Reject Limits. Total Collapse Limits in Collapse Mode is that value achieved at the end of Hold. Within Collapse Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject limits.

6.10.1.5 Absolute Distance

You can use the Absolute Distance Mode to select the distance (in inches or millimeters) the horn will travel before ultrasonic energy is terminated. Within Absolute Mode, you can also select several other parameters ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject limits.

6.10.1.6 Ground Detect

You can use Ground Detect Weld Mode to have ultrasonic energy turn off when the horn comes in contact with your electrically isolated fixture or anvil. The electrically isolated fixture should be so designed that the insulator allows no continuity to the actuator base. It is necessary to install Branson cable EDP No. 100-246-630 from the MPS/GDS receptacle on the rear of the actuator to your isolated fixture/anvil in order to utilize this feature.

From within Ground Detect Mode, you can also select several other parameters, ranging from Hold Time (in seconds) to Suspect and Reject Limits.

6.10.2 Trigger


Press the *Trigger* button to toggle between Trigger Force and Trigger Distance.

6.10.3 Trigger Force

Set the number of pounds (Newtons) of trigger force that will trigger ultrasonics. When the force on your part is equal to the value you have set, ultrasonic energy is applied.

6.10.4 Trigger Distance

Set the distance (in inches or millimeters) that will trigger ultrasonics. When the distance is equal to the value you have set, ultrasonic energy is applied.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Start switches must be maintained from part contact through hold time. |

6.10.5 Weld Time

Set the length of time (in seconds) that ultrasonic energy will be transmitted to your parts.

6.10.6 Weld Energy

Set the amount of energy (in Joules) that will be transmitted to your parts.

6.10.7 Peak Power

Set the peak power level (in Watts or as a percentage of full power) at which the weld is terminated.

6.10.8 Collapse

Set the vertical distance (in inches or millimeters) that your part collapses before ultrasonics are terminated.

6.10.9 Absolute

Set the vertical distance (in inches or millimeters) that the horn travels from the home position before ultrasonics are terminated.

6.10.10 Scrub Time

Set the amount of time after detection of a ground condition to the termination of ultrasonics.

6.10.11 Scrub Amplitude

Sets the scrub amplitude in percent when ground detect mode is selected.

6.10.12 Hold Time

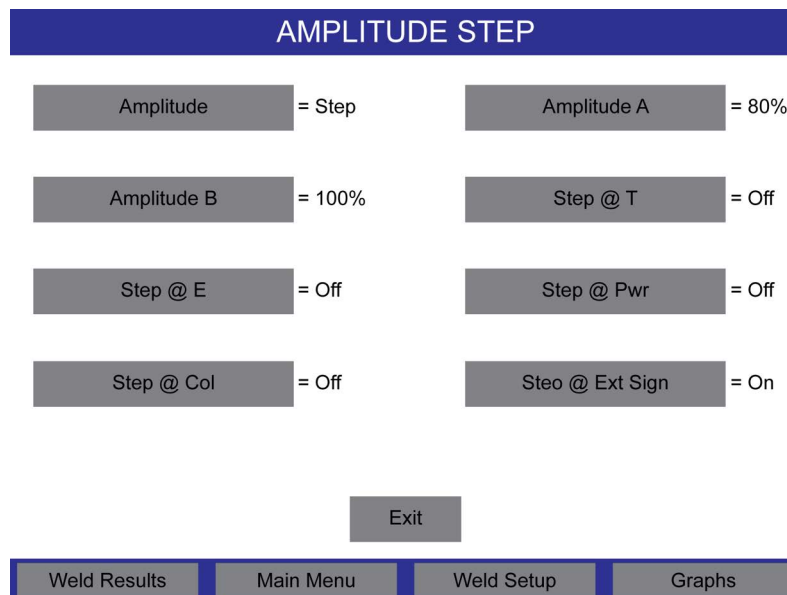
Sets the duration (in seconds) of the Hold step (the step during which there is no ultrasonic energy transmitted to your part, but pressure is maintained) in welding your parts.

You can turn off this function.

6.10.13 Amplitude Step

You can select whether you want to apply a fixed or stepped amplitude to the part during welding. If Step was selected ON from the Weld Setup page the following screens will be shown. Pressing Amplitude displays a screen with two choices, STEP or FIXED. If FIXED was selected ON from Weld Setup, the screen with 2 choices, STEP or FIXED is displayed. If you choose to use a stepped amplitude, you must also choose the first and second amplitudes (each in microns or as a percentage of the maximum) to use before and after the step point, as well as the criteria to use the step.


Figure 6.19 Amplitude Step




6.10.14 Amplitude

You can set the amplitude of the ultrasonic energy that will be delivered in any welding mode. The power supply's default is to use 100% of the available amplitude. By changing the amplitude to some lesser percentage of the total available, or by setting the amplitude

to begin at one level and finish at another, you can “fine tune” your overall welding procedure without making changes to your tooling (converter, booster, horn, or fixture).

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>You can select the amplitude to use only when Amplitude is set to Fixed. If amplitude is Stepped, this parameter is inactive and the display shows *** for Amplitude.</p> |

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If you set Amplitude Control to External in System Configuration, this parameter is inactive and the display shows Ext for Amplitude ($\mu\text{m}/\%$).</p> |

6.10.15 Step Pressure

You can select whether you want to apply a fixed or stepped pressure to the part during welding. If Step was selected ON from the Weld Setup page the following screens will be shown. Pressing Pressure displays a screen with two choices, STEP or FIXED. If FIXED was selected ON from Weld Setup, the screen with 2 choices, STEP or FIXED is displayed. If you choose to use a stepped pressure, you must also choose the first and second amplitudes (each as PSI) to use before and after the step point, as well as the criteria to use the step.

Figure 6.20 Pressure Step

PRESSURE STEP

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Pressure = Step | Pressure A = 50PSI |
| Pressure B = 100PSI | Step @ T = 0.010s |
| Step @ E = Off | Step @ Pwr = Off |
| Step @ Col = Off | Step @ Ext Sig = Off |

Exit

Weld Results


Main Menu


Weld Setup

Graphs

6.10.16 Weld Pressure

You can set the PSI pressure that will be delivered in any welding mode. The power supply's default is to use 50 PSI pressure. By changing the pressure to some lesser PSI, or by setting the pressure to begin at one level and finish at another, you can "fine tune" your overall welding procedure without making changes to your tooling (converter, booster, horn, or fixture).

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>You can select the amplitude to use only when Pressure is set to Fixed. If pressure is Stepped, this parameter is inactive and the display shows *** for Pressure.</p> |

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Pressure B must be greater than or equal to Pressure A.</p> |

6.10.17 Downspeak

Sets the percent air flow from the actuator's pneumatic cylinder for speed control. The settings can be made between 1 and 100%, and the speed will depend on air pressure and stroke length. The flow valve is motorized and does change instantaneous with adjustments.

If the Downspeak Tuning function is on in the System Configuration screen, the flow valve can be fine tuned to the actuator speed required.

6.10.18 Rapid Traverse

Allows a high horn travel speed for a portion of the stroke. Once the set distance is reached, travel speed is reduced to the downspeed setting.


| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Distance should be set at least 1.0 inches above the actual distance required to switch. Depending on your downspeed setting, the distance may have to be adjusted to touch the part at the required velocity. |

Figure 6.21 Rapid Traverse



6.10.19 Hold Pressure

Hold Pressure sets the actuator air pressure during the hold portion of a cycle. If set for Default, the hold pressure will always equal the weld pressure. The hold pressure must always be equal or greater than the weld pressure or a setup alarm will occur.

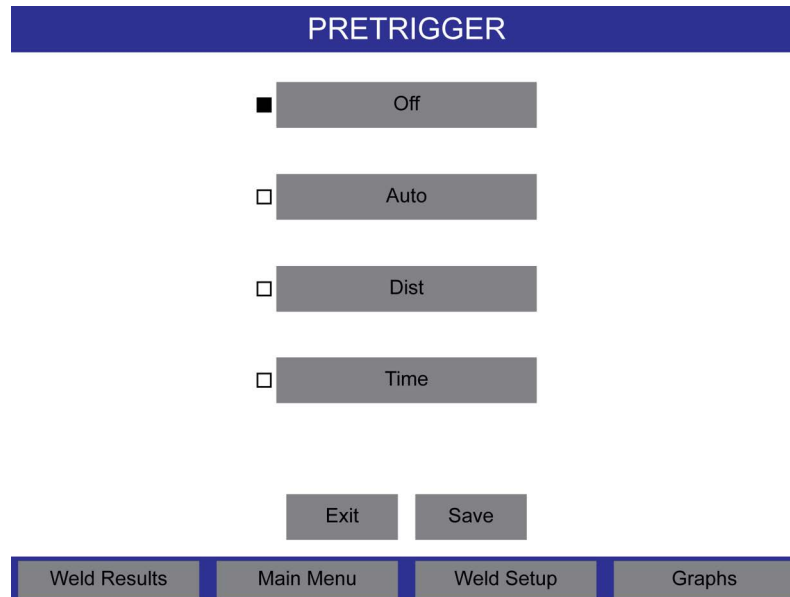
Figure 6.22 Hold Pressure



6.10.20 Pretrigger

You can select whether the ultrasonic energy will be started before the horn makes contact with the part. If you select ON, you can set the distance at which the pretrigger ultrasonics will be started, and the amplitude that will be used. Auto(pretrigger) is the default. When Auto Pretrigger is used, ultrasonic energy will start when the horn leaves the home position 1/8 in. (3.175 mm) travel. Pressing either the Auto or Dist button will give access to a keypad to enter Pretrg Amp($\mu\text{m}/\%$) values. Pressing the Time will give access to a keypad to enter both Pretrg Amp($\mu\text{m}/\%$) and Pretrg@T(s) values.

Figure 6.23 Pretrigger



6.10.21 Save/Recall Presets

See [6.18 Save/Recall Presets](#) for more information.

6.10.22 Write In Field

Write In Field provides a means to assign a 10 digit alphanumeric to a specific weld setup and cycle. This is useful for tracking parameter performance relative to a specific welder, and its respective production run.

Figure 6.24 Write In Field



6.10.23 Batch Setup

Set the batch counter from this menu.

Figure 6.25 Batch Setup

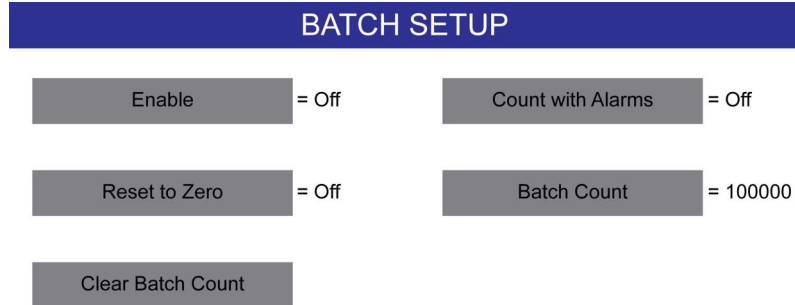


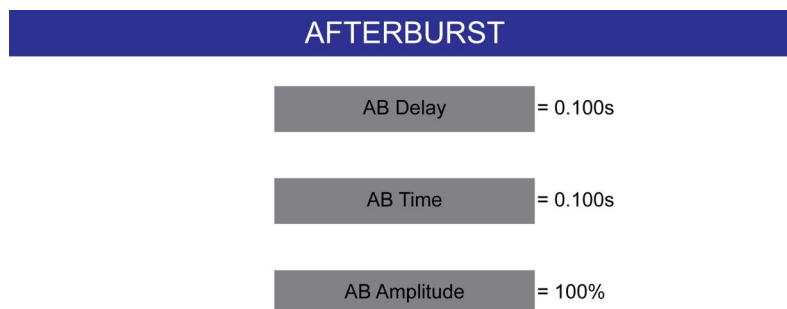
Table 6.12 Batch Setup

| Name | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable | Toggle between On and Off. |
| Count with Alarms | If Count With Alarm is set to ON, Weld cycles with alarms will also increment the counter. |
| Reset to Zero | If Reset to Zero is set to On, resetting the batch counter alarm will reset the batch count. |
| Batch Count | Set the number of welds required in the batch. |
| Clear Batch Count | Clears the batch count. |

6.10.24 Afterburst

You can select whether there will be a burst of ultrasonic energy after welding is complete. This feature is useful for removing parts stuck to the horn. If you select ON, you can also set the delay and length of the afterburst (in seconds), and the amplitude that will be used.

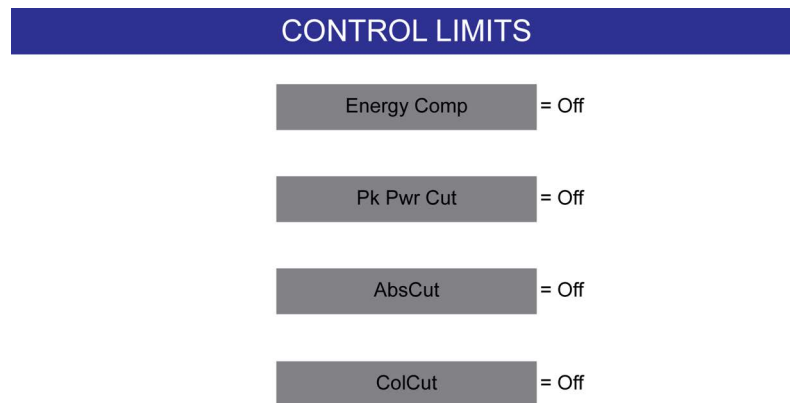
Figure 6.26 Afterburst



6.10.25 Control Limits

You can select whether to use Control Limits. If you select ON, you will set limits of minimum and maximum energy compensation (in Joules), a peak power cutoff (in Watts or as a percentage of the maximum), an absolute distance (in) measured from the home position, or a collapse distance (in) measured from the trigger. The 2000Xc Power Supply uses these Control Limits in addition to the primary weld mode and parameter to determine the end of the welding cycle before moving to the Hold state. When energy compensation is on and the minimum energy computed value is not reached, the weld time will be extended up to 50% of the Set Weld time value in order to reach this limit. When the maximum energy computed value is reached, the Weld Time will be terminated and the Hold Time will start.

Figure 6.27 Control Limits

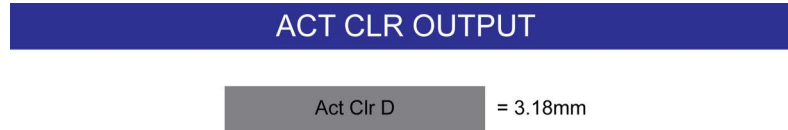


6.10.26 Act Clr Output

You can set an output from the controller board to become active at a set distance for both the upstroke and down stroke from the Home position. The set value ensures that indexing equipment will not contact the Horn after welding. Press the navigation button in the Actuator Clear Output screen to access the numeric keypad. Enter the desired value and Enter.

This distance is also used to deactivate the Ready For Clamp output.

Figure 6.28 Act Clear Output



6.10.27 Cycle Aborts

You can select whether to abort any cycle based on certain input conditions. You can set the Ground Detect Cutoff to ON or OFF (to indicate whether to abort the cycle if the horn contacts the electrically isolated fixture or anvil), and set Missing Part to ON or OFF (to indicate whether to abort the cycle if a part is not in the fixture). If you have set Missing Part to ON, you will access respective keypads to set Maximum and Minimum missing part distances. A missing part output can also be defined in the User I/O. Any cycle-abort conditions will generate an alarm and terminate the cycle.

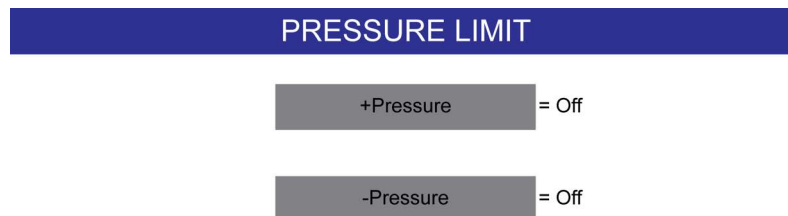
Figure 6.29 Cycle Aborts



6.10.28 Pressure Limit

Pressure limit sets the minimum and maximum weld pressure alarms. If the weld pressure is below the minimum or above the maximum an alarm will occur.

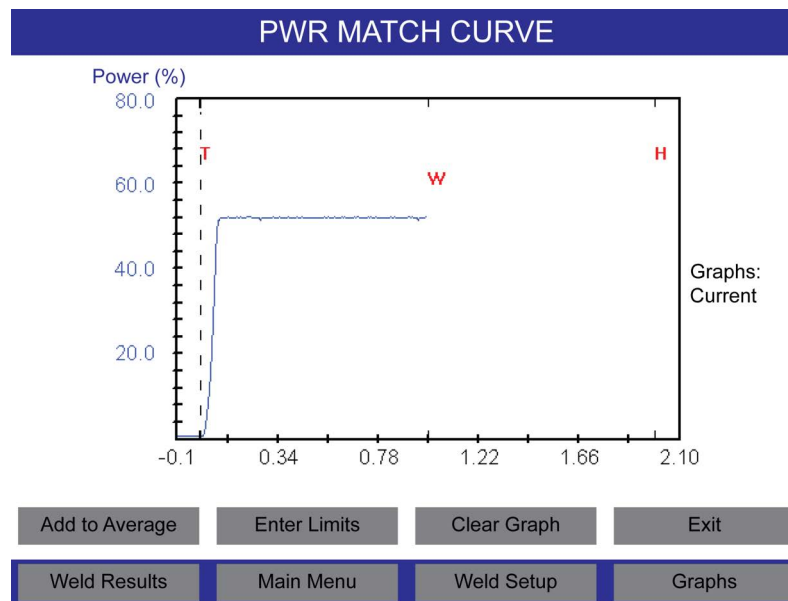
Figure 6.30 Pressure Limit



6.10.29 Power Match Curve

You can enter \pm R Band limit values as a % of desired or expected Power to be compared with an actual Power curve of an acceptable weld. This provides a means of comparing welds in progress to previously determined successful weld parameters. Pressing the Enter Limits button will take you to the respective \pm R Band buttons, which when pressed will open a keypad to enter values. Limits are then tailored to maintain weld quality. You can add each new weld to get a composite average by pressing the Add to Average button. Limit bands are only displayed when limits are entered. The current weld will display as blue; the average displays red; and the limit bands will display as black.

Figure 6.31 Power Match Curve



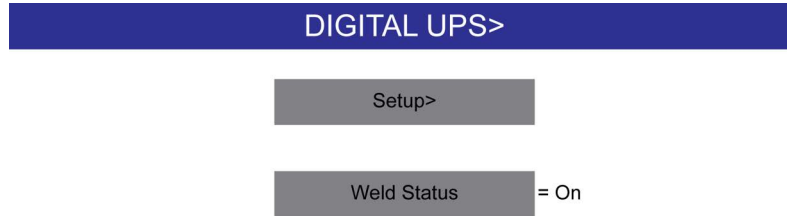
6.10.30 Ext U/S Delay

If turned on, go first to Sys Config> User I/O and select any available J3 INPUT pin, and then select Ext U/S Delay from the list of available Inputs. Weld will be delayed until the input is cleared.

6.10.31 Digital UPS

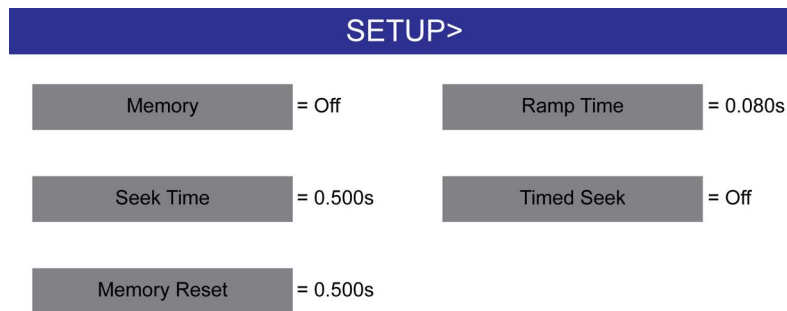
Use this screen to setup the DUPS and view available presets. This screen will only appear if the power supply has a DUPS module (Digital Universal Power Supply). The DUPS navigation screen is shown below.

Figure 6.32 Digital UPS



From the Setup navigation button, you can toggle to turn either memory, memory reset, or timed seek On or Off and set the ramp time and seek time.

Figure 6.33 Digital UPS Setup



When the Weld Status button is toggled Off, you can view Time, Peak Power and Frequency Change alarms accessed in Weld Results.

When the Weld Status button is toggled On, additional alarms unique to the DUPS can be accessed in Weld Results.

6.10.32 Post Weld Seek

You can select Post Weld Seek. Post Weld Seek operates the stack at a low-level (5%) amplitude immediately after the weld cycle completes, so the power supply can determine the current operating frequency of the stack. The Post Weld Seek button allows you to turn this feature On or Off.

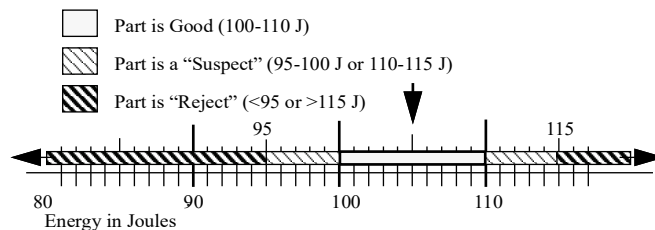
6.10.33 Setting Limits

From within any weld mode, you can set the main parameter (indicated by the name of the weld mode) and Hold Time and several other parameters. The other parameters you can set include Suspect Limits and Reject Limits. You can reduce the amount of scrap from unacceptable parts by identifying those parts that are slightly out of range using Suspect and/or Reject Limits. Upon manual inspection, you might find that these parts are acceptable. You can set the Suspect and Reject Limits on the power supply to identify (by counter, output, or alarm) all parts that fall into limit categories.

For example, consider a weld cycle in Time Weld Mode, where you have set the time to 0.280 second. You have determined (by laboratory testing, trial and error, or some other means) that you get an acceptable weld when 100 to 110 Joules of energy have been transmitted to the part. These are the limits that you should then set on the power supply as Suspect Limits. You have also determined that the part is a "reject" if it received fewer than 95 Joules or more than 115 Joules. This is illustrated by the following graph:

You can set Suspect and Reject Limits for meaningful parameters in each weld mode.

Figure 6.34 Setting Limits




6.10.34 Reject Limits

You can select whether to use Reject Limits to indicate that a part does not have a good weld. You can set limits of minimum and maximum time allowed for:

- weld time
- energy levels
- peak power levels
- collapse distance
- absolute distance
- trigger distance
- weld force
- frequency
- downspeed

If you set Reset Required to Yes, when an alarm is generated, you will need to press the Reset key prior to welding another part.


| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Reject limits put out a signal to pins 20 and 5 of J3 respectively. The 44 pin I/O cable J957 connects to J3.</p> |

6.10.35 Suspect Limits

You can select whether to use Suspect Limits to indicate that a part might not have a good weld. You can set limits of minimum and maximum time allowed for:

- weld time
- energy levels
- peak power levels
- collapse distance
- absolute distance
- trigger distance
- weld force

If you set Reset Required to Yes, when an alarm is generated, you will need to press the Reset key prior to welding another part.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Suspect limits put out a signal to pins 20 and 5 of J3 respectively. The 44 pin I/O cable J957 connects to J3.</p> |

6.10.36 Energy Brake

When turned on, the power supply has some time to reduce the amplitude before the sonics are shut off.

Figure 6.35 Energy Brake



6.10.37 Frequency Offset


You can select whether to use a Frequency Offset. If you select ON, you must also set the offset (in Hz), which the 2000Xc Power Supply will apply to the frequency value at the trigger point stored in the power supply.

Figure 6.36 Frequency Offset



6.10.38 Timeout

You select the duration (in seconds) of the maximum allowable time for the primary parameter to be reached during the weld in modes other than time. If the primary parameter has not been reached, the ultrasonic energy will be turned off and the Hold Time will start at the set timeout value. This feature is not available in Time mode. Touching the Timeout navigation button will access the keypad to set and enter the desired value.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
|  | This feature is not available in time mode. |

6.10.39 Downspeed Tuning

Downspeed tuning enables the downspeed setup menu to be shown every time the downspeed value is changed.

The downspeed tuning is a mechanism to hone in on a particular downspeed value by small increments.

6.10.40 Setup Limits

Setup Limits set the minimum and maximum parameter changes allowed to be made for a validated weld preset. When Setup Limits are enabled, a technician can change a validated and locked weld preset's setup parameters within the minimum and maximum range set.

Figure 6.37 Setup Limits

| SETUP LIMITS | | Pg1of2 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| + Weld Energy = Off | - Weld Energy = Off | |
| + Down Speed = Off | - Down Speed = Off | |
| + Weld Pressure = Off | - Weld Pressure = Off | |
| + Amp A = Off | - Amp A = Off | |
| Exit | | >> |
| Weld Results | Main Menu | Weld Setup |
| | | Graphs |

6.11 System Configuration

The following parameters are available in System configuration:

Table 6.13 System Configuration, Page 01

| System Configuration, Page 01 | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Units | Start Screen |
| User ID Setup | USB Data |
| Operator Authority | Cycle Counter |
| Basic/Expert | Time |

Table 6.14 System Configuration, Page 02

| System Configuration, Page 02 | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Date | Part-ID Scan |
| Preset Barcode Start | Extra Cooling |
| Ext Presets | Windows Setup |
| Horn Clamp | User I/O |

Table 6.15 System Configuration, Page 03

| System Configuration, Page 03 | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Bargraph Scales | Column Setup |
| Screen Setup | Beepers |
| Automation | Authority Check |
| Act Settings | Weld History Setup |

Table 6.16 System Configuration, Page 04

| System Configuration, Page 04 | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Sys Components | Component Verify |
| Freq Offset | Memory Full |
| Digital Filter | Welder Addr |
| Reset Required | Amp Control |

Table 6.17 System Configuration, Page 05


| System Configuration, Page 05 | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Downspeed Tuning | Key |
| RS-232c | Pressure Step Down |
| WebSrv AuthCheck | Data Transfer |

Table 6.17 System Configuration, Page 05

| System Configuration, Page 05 | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| Data Record Options | Amplitude Units |
| Power Units | |

6.11.1 Units

Press the *Units* button to toggle between USCS or metric units.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Select units (metric or USCS) before making selections. Rounding may cause an invalid preset alarm when using the minimum or maximum values, when changing units.</p> |

6.11.2 Start Screen

Press the *Start Screen* button to choose whether to start at the Main menu or Weld Results screen at startup.

6.11.3 User ID Setup

Displays current users and their creation/modification date. Users can be added or modified from this screen.

Figure 6.38 User ID Setup

| USER ID SETUP | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|---------|------------|
| User ID | Date & Time | Status | User Level |
| ADMIN | 00/00/00,00:00:00 | Enabled | Executive |
| FER | 03/26/15,16:01:35 | Enabled | Supervisor |

^

v

^

v

Add User

Modify User

Weld Results

Main Menu

Weld Setup

Graphs

6.11.3.1 Add User

Press the Add User button to add a new User ID.

Figure 6.39 Add User

ADD USER

User ID = DF2

Password = 123ABC

User Level > Operator

Status = Enable

Password Expire = 30 Days

Idle Logout Time = 1440 Minutes

Total Active Users = 1

Exit

Save

Weld Results

Main Menu

Weld Setup

Graphs

Table 6.18 Add User

| Name | Description |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| User ID | Set the new User ID name. |
| Password | Set the password for the User ID. <div style="background-color: #003366; color: white; padding: 2px; font-weight: bold; margin-bottom: 5px;">NOTICE</div> Password must have at least one capital letter, one number and one small letter and one special character available. The minimum length of the password must be of 8 character and max is 10 character. |
| User Level | Set the user level to Operator, Technician, Supervisor, or Executive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operator can run Validated Presets, View Setup, System Information, Weld History, Alarm Log, Event Log, and Weld Results Technician level adds Unvalidated Presets, Horn Down, Sequencing, Preset changes, Calibration, and Diagnostics Supervisor level adds Validating Setup, and System Configuration Executive level has rights to all settings |
| Status | Enable or disable users. |
| Password Expire | Set the time in days before users will have to change their password; otherwise it will expire and the User ID will be locked/disabled. |
| Idle Logout Time | Set the time after which the system will automatically logout the user in case of no activity. <div style="background-color: #003366; color: white; padding: 2px; font-weight: bold; margin-bottom: 5px;">NOTICE</div> Disabled in automation mode. |

6.11.3.2 Modify User

Select a User ID from the list to modify the parameters of the selected user.

6.11.4 USB Data

See [6.21.2 Streaming Data Setup](#) for more information.

6.11.5 Operator Authority

Set additional authority options for the Operator user level. Operators can reset alarms, recall presets, reset the batch counter, run unvalidated presets, perform calibrations, and reset the horn clamp alarm without using login credentials.

Figure 6.40 Operator Authority

The screenshot displays the 'OPERATOR AUTHORITY' menu. At the top is a dark blue header with the text 'OPERATOR AUTHORITY' in white. Below the header are six options, each with a checkbox and a grey button: 'Reset Alarms', 'Run Unvalidated Preset', 'Recall Preset', 'Calibration', 'Reset Batch Counter', and 'Reset Horn Clamp Alarm'. Below these options are two buttons: 'Exit' and 'Save'. At the bottom of the screen is a navigation bar with four buttons: 'Weld Results', 'Main Menu', 'Weld Setup', and 'Graphs'.

6.11.6 Cycle Counter

Press the *Cycle Counter* button to reset the cycle counter.

Figure 6.41 Cycle Counter

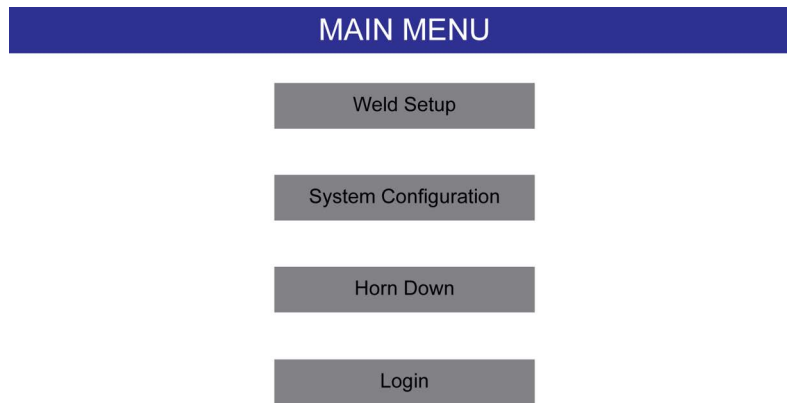
The screenshot shows a dark blue dialog box with the text 'Reset Cycle Counter?' in white. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: 'Ok' and 'Cancel'.

6.11.7 Basic/Expert

Expert (default) allows access to all functions and menus of the welder. Basic limits the configuration and weld setup menus to a minimum number:


- Weld Setup
- System Configuration (only Basic/Expert button)
- Horn Down
- Login button
- Bottom bar menus

Figure 6.42 Basic Mode



6.11.8 Time

Set the time of the power supply. Time will be displayed in Weld Results.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|  | Time is set in 24 hour format. |

6.11.9 Date

Set the date of the power supply. Date will be displayed in Weld Results.

6.11.10 Part-ID Scan

If set to ON, a USB barcode reader or similar device must read and record the part ID before allowing the weld to occur. When set to ON and after a weld cycle, the welder will stay out of ready mode until another part ID is read. If set to OFF, no part ID reading is required before a weld. The horn down and Diagnostic functions will not be enabled when out of ready mode.

6.11.11 Preset Barcode Start

Enter a character (letter or symbol) that will indicate a preset is to be recalled when scanned with a barcode. The number following the character indicates which preset number. Example; Preset Barcode Start = P indicates if a barcode reader sees the letter P as the first character of a barcode, it will recall a preset based on the number after P on the barcode.

6.11.12 Extra Cooling

When set to On, allows cooling air to start when upper limit switch is triggered and remain on throughout the cycle. When Off, air is applied at ultrasonics application.

6.11.13 Ext Presets

Press the *Ext Presets* button to toggle between On and Off.

External selection of presets is accessed and turned On or Off in the System Configuration menu. The selection goes into effect for the next weld cycle. When enabled, inputs can be read when start switch is received to start a new cycle. The user inputs J3-17, J3-19, J3-31, J3-32, J3-33 are used to decode which preset is recalled.

- When a preset is recalled externally, it will be verified if needed
- A new alarm message has been added that will indicate that a preset has not been defined (saved) or an attempt has been made to recall a preset not available for a control level
- External selection of presets will default to off. Cold start will not affect the setting

6.11.14 Windows Setup

Allows access to the Microsoft Windows screen. Double click the 2000Xc icon to return to the 2000Xc Power Supply interface.

Figure 6.43 2000Xc Icon



Language Utility

From the Windows interface, you can change the language of the 2000Xc Power Supply interface. Double click the Language Utility icon and select the language.

Figure 6.44 Language Utility Icon

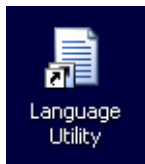



Figure 6.45 Language Utility



6.11.15 Horn Clamp

If set to ON, the horn will stay down and hold the part in place in the event of an alarm.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>A Technician can reset it and remove the part.</p> |

6.11.16 User I/O

The User I/O menu is used to configure custom actuator inputs and outputs. The User I/O menu can only be entered when the welder is not in the process of welding. If the welder is welding, the beeper will sound and entry will be denied. When entry does occur, the welder will no longer be ready, preventing welding, horn down and test. If horn down is not available, a 2-second message will be displayed indicating horn down is not available. Refer to the Branson Automation Guide (EDP [100-214-273](#)) for additional information about selection and use of Input and Output features listed in the following Table.


Table 6.19 User I/O

| User I/O Inputs | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Name | Description | Signal Type |
| Disabled | Disabled function to the pin. | Input/Output |
| Select Preset* | Select preset by using five BCD inputs. Can select up to 31. | Input |
| Ext U/S Delay | An external input starts the weld cycle after the horn makes contact. | Input |
| Display Lock | Locks the front touchscreen out from the user. | Input |
| Ext Signal | Used as the start signal when in handheld mode. | Input |
| Sonics Disable | Force ultrasonics off. If active throughout a weld cycle, a "dry" cycle will occur. | Input |
| Memory Reset | Sets the starting frequency of the horn to digital tune centered value. | Input |
| Ext Tooling Input | When the actuator receives a start input, the Ready for Clamp output indicates the start has been activated. The actuator stays in its home position until the Part Clamp input receives a signal. Then, the normal actuation cycle begins. | Input |
| Sync In | Used to start ultrasonics when multiple welders are used on the same part. | Input |
| Part Present | Input to indicate to the welder a part is in place and ready to weld. | Input |
| Confirm Reject | Input to welder to indicate a rejected part has been dealt with appropriately and the welder can return to ready mode. | Input |
| Confirm Preset | Output signal that indicates that a weld preset has been inputted from an external controller. | Output |
| Ext Beeper | Output that operates the same as the internal beeper. | Output |
| Cycle OK | Output to indicate no alarm conditions occurred in the last weld. | Output |

Table 6.19 User I/O

| User I/O Inputs | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Name | Description | Signal Type |
| No Cycle Alarm | Indicates the last weld cycle was aborted due to an abnormal welder internal system malfunction. | Output |
| Overload Alarms | Output that indicates a power supply overload has occurred during the last weld cycle, test, or seek. | Output |
| Modified Alarm | Output that indicates a user set compensating control limit condition occurred. | Output |
| Note | Output alarm condition of the lowest priority. | Output |
| Missing Part | Output that indicates the trigger occurred above the minimum or below the maximum user set allowable distance. | Output |
| Ext Tooling Output | When the actuator receives a start input, the Ready for Clamp output indicates the start has been activated. The actuator stays in its home position until the Part Clamp input receives a signal. Then, the normal actuation cycle begins. | Output |
| Sync Out | Used to start ultrasonics when multiple welders are used on the same part. | Output |
| Part-ID Ready | Output that indicates the barcode scanner has read the part ID and is ready to weld. | Output |
| External Test | Input to perform test externally, result is sent through RS-232c (see 6.11.35 RS-232c for setup). | Input |

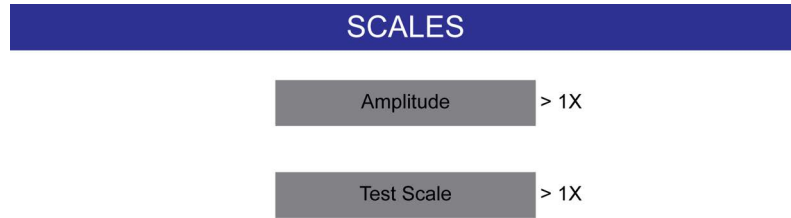
*This option is not available at J3-1 Input.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If an output pin is assigned to missing part, the missing part function must first be turned on. If not, the resulting setup alarm will list Cycle Aborts and User I/O as the additional information. Either turn on missing part or turn off the output pin assigned to missing part.</p> |

6.11.17 Bargraph Scales

Allows you to get the weld scale and test scale to 1X, 2X, or 3X.

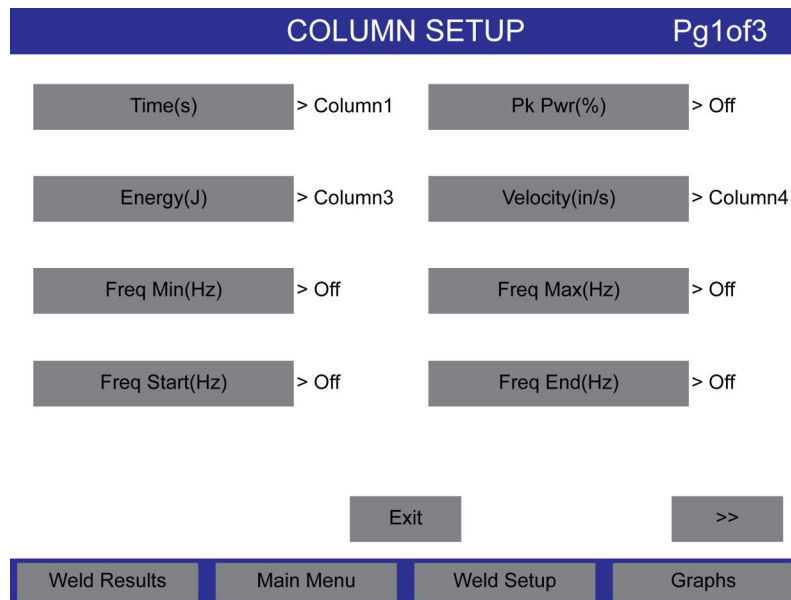
Figure 6.46 Bargraph Scales



6.11.18 Column Setup

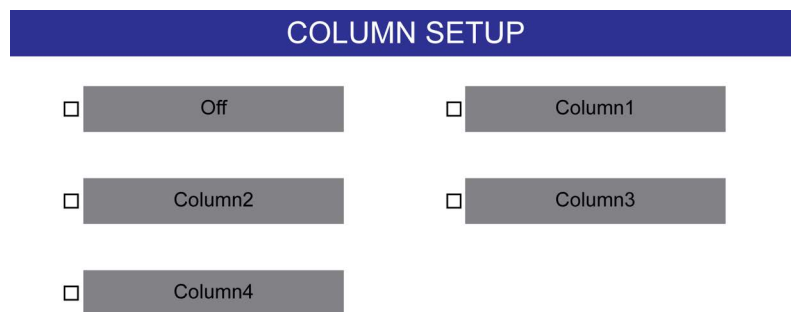
Up to 4 parameters from the Column Setup menu screens can be selected to be viewed in the Weld Results screen.

Figure 6.47 Column Setup



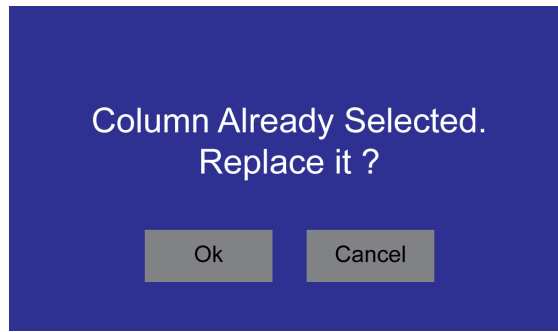
Select the parameter to be tracked by pressing the desired parameter button. You can select to turn a parameter off or select the column number position.

Figure 6.48 Column Setup



If you select a previously used column, you will be asked if you want to replace it.

Figure 6.49 Column Already Selected



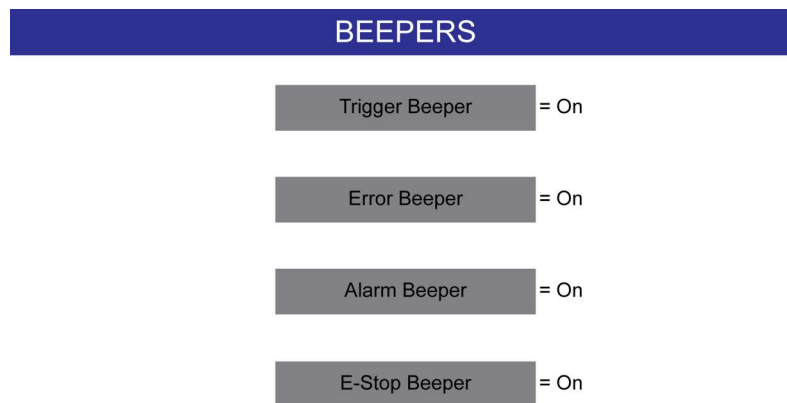
6.11.19 Screen Setup

See [6.12 Screen Setup](#) for more information.

6.11.20 Beepers

Select which events will have an audio beep.

Figure 6.50 Beepers



6.11.21 Automation

Set to ON when used in automation and an operator log in is not required. When in automation, weld setup and configuration menus are disabled.

6.11.22 Authority Check

Authority check ensures that users logging into the power supply only have access to features dependent on their authority level. Set to Yes to enables authority level functions and menus.


| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | For Login authority to operate properly, Authority Check must be set to Yes. |


Table 6.20 Authority Check

| Feature or Menu | Authority Level | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| | Operator | Technician | Supervisor | Executive |
| Run Validated Weld Presets | X | X | X | X |
| Run Unvalidated Weld Presets | X* | X | X | X |
| Reset Alarms | X* | X | X | X |
| Recall Weld Preset | X* | X | X | X |
| Reset Batch Counter | X* | X | X | X |
| Quick Calibration | X* | X | X | X |
| Weld Setup | | X | X | X |
| Horn Down | | X | X | X |
| Diagnostics | | X | X | X |
| Modify Weld Preset Parameters within Min/Max Range | | X | X | X |
| Save Presets to USB | | X | X | X |
| System Configuration | | | X** | X |
| Validate and Lock Weld Presets | | | X | X |
| Modify Locked Weld Presets | | | X | X |
| Add/Modify User ID Setup | | | | X |
| Set Authority Check to Yes | | | | X |

X = Access to feature or menu

X* = Access to feature or menu with permission given

X** = Access with some limitations

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>It is recommended to disable the default Executive Admin account and create your own Executive accounts.</p> |

6.11.23 Act Settings

Change actuator settings.

Figure 6.51 Actuator Settings

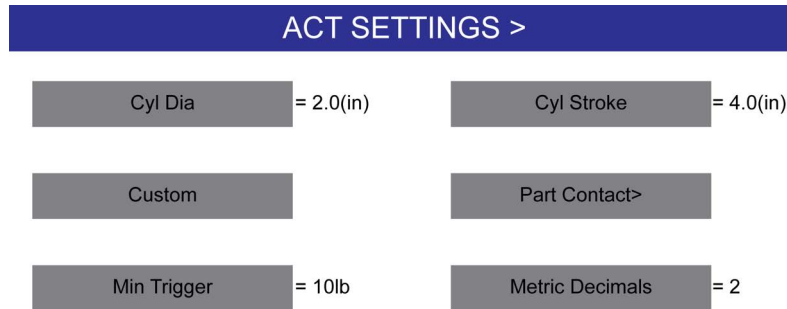


Table 6.21 Actuator Settings


| Name | Description |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cyl Dia | Set the cylinder diameters. |
| Cyl Stroke | Set the cylinder stroke. |
| Custom | Set the upper limit switch and ground detect to 0 V or 24 V. |
| Part Contact | Set the velocity and force. |
| Min Trigger | Set the minimum trigger in lb. |
| Metric decimals | Set the number of metric decimals. |

6.11.24 Weld History Setup

Select which parameters will be shown in Weld History. Available parameters are:

Table 6.22 Weld History

| Name | Description |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Weld Time | Ultrasonic weld time during cycle. |
| Peak Pwr | Peak Power. Peak power achieved during ultrasonic cycle. |
| Energy | Ultrasonic Energy applied during the weld. |
| Velocity | Velocity of actuator 1/4 inches before part contact. |
| Weld Abs | Weld Absolute. Distance the actuator traveled from home position to end of ultrasonic weld. |
| Total Abs | Total Absolute. Distance the actuator traveled from home position to end of hold time. |
| Weld Col | Weld Collapse. Distance the actuator traveled from part contact to end of ultrasonic weld. |
| Total Col | Total Collapse. Distance the actuator traveled from part contact to end of hold time. |
| Set Amp A | Set Amplitude A. Amplitude microns or percentage of ultrasonics for fixed amplitude and first part of amplitude step. |
| Set Amp B | Set Amplitude B. Amplitude microns or percentage of ultrasonics for second part of amplitude step. |
| Weld Force | Actuator force at end of weld. |
| Act Pressure | Actuator Pressure. Pressure during weld. |
| Freq Min | Frequency Minimum. Minimum ultrasonic frequency measured during the weld cycle. |
| Freq Max | Frequency Maximum. Maximum ultrasonic frequency measured during the weld cycle. |
| Freq Start | Frequency Start. Starting ultrasonic frequency of the horn during the weld cycle. |
| Freq End | Frequency End. Ending ultrasonic frequency of the horn during the weld cycle. |
| Freq Change | Frequency Change. Frequency Max minus Frequency Min. |
| Cycle Time | Total cycle time from the actuator leaving the home position to returning to the home position. |
| Hold Force | Actuator force at end of hold. |

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
|  | By default, every parameter is enabled. |

6.11.25 Sys Components

Allows you to enter/scan power supply, actuator, and stack assemblies. These settings will be displayed in System Information. Every preset will have these assemblies at the time of preset validation.


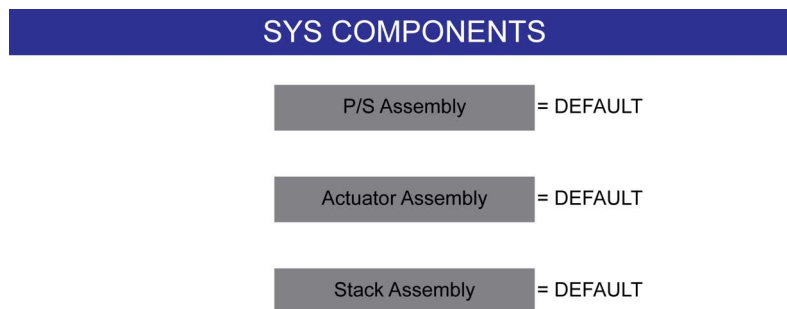
| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Only Supervisor or Executive users can change these settings and any change will be recorded in the event history log. |

Figure 6.52 Sys Components



6.11.26 Component Verify

Users can decide to match any of these assemblies with the saved assembly in the Validated Preset screen before allowing a weld cycle. If any of assemblies are selected on the above screen then the assembly in System Configuration will be matched with the assembly in Validated Preset before starting a cycle. A Setup alarm will be generated in case of any mis match and weld will not be allowed for that preset.


| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Only Supervisor or Executive users can change these settings and any change will be recorded in the event history log.</p> |

Figure 6.53 Component Verify

COMPONENT VERIFY

P/S Assembly

Actuator Assembly


Stack Assembly

6.11.27 Freq Offset

Set whether the frequency offset is internally (Int) or externally (Ext) controlled.


6.11.28 Memory Full

Set whether the welding cycle will be allowed to run once the system's internal memory is full for Weld History or Events. If allowed to Run, the oldest cycle will be overwritten with the next weld cycle. Memory can be cleared by using Copy Now and deleting memory.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Only Supervisor or Executive users can change these settings.</p> |

6.11.29 Digital Filter

Set the digital filter for graphing on or off.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Branson recommends that you set the Digital Filter to on. |

6.11.30 Welder Addr

Turn on to assign a unique trackable number to a welder for data collection. This information will be displayed in System Information.

6.11.31 Reset Required

If Reset Required is set to On, the Reset key needs to be pressed before welding another part.

6.11.32 Amp Control

Press the *Amp Control* button to set the amplitude control to internal or external.

6.11.33 Downspeed Tuning

If the Downspeed Tuning function is set to on in the System Configuration screen, the flow valve can be fine tuned to the actuator speed required.

6.11.34 Key

Reserved for special product configuration codes.


6.11.35 RS-232c

An ASCII string of weld data is sent out through the RS-232c port after each weld. The data is separated with the user-selected choice of a space, comma or tab. The end of the string contains both a carriage return and a line feed. The data contained within the string is dependent on the control level and actuator type. It is the same data that is printed on the single line data output to the printer. It is also formatted in the correct units. The data can be read either by a PC or PLC and then saved to a file in a format (i.e. CSV) that can be read by a spreadsheet program such as Excel. Alarm information will not be sent out the RS-232c port.

Figure 6.54 RS-232c

RS232

ASCII (comma)
 ASCII (tab)
 ASCII (space)
 Disabled

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Select units (metric or USCS) before making selections. Rounding may cause an Invalid Preset alarm when using the minimum or maximum values, when changing units.</p> <p>See 6.11.1 Units for more information.</p> |

6.11.35.1 Data String Sample Output

The following examples illustrate the data string that is sent out through the serial port after each weld. The table following these data strings shows the relationship between control levels. IDID can be any number from 1 to 9999. Table headings 1 through 3 respectively reference data string examples 1 through 3.

Table 6.23 Sample Output for Control Level t with an ae actuator

| Output | Units |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| DID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@sfff@aaaCRLF | USCS |
| IDID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@DD/MM/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@sfff@aaaCRLF | Metric |

Table 6.24 Sample Output for Control Level ea, or d with an ae actuator

| Output | Units |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| IDID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeee@sfff@aaa@bbbCRLF | USCS |
| IDID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@DD/MM/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeee@sfff@aaa@bbbCRLF | Metric |

Table 6.25 Sample Output for Control Level d with an aed actuator

| Output | Units |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| IDID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeee@w.www@z.zzz@x.xxx@FFF@hhh@sfff@aaa@bb@vv.vCRLF | USCS |
| IDID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@DD/MM/YY@Mode@tt.ttt@ppp.p@eeee@ww.www@zz.zzz@xx.xxx@FFF@hhh@sfff@aaa@bb@vv.vCRLF | Metric |

Table 6.26 External test data string output

| External test data string output |
|----------------------------------------------|
| IDID@ccccccc@hh:mm:ss@MM/DD/YY@WWWW@ffffCRLF |
| WWWW test power ffff test frequency |


6.11.35.2 Code Output

Table 6.27 Code Output

| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | Where | Definition |
|---|---|---|---|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| x | x | x | x | cccccccc@ | is up to an 8-digit cycle count (Cycle Number) |
| x | x | x | x | hh:mm:ss@ | is time of cycle in hours, minutes and seconds (Time) |
| x | x | x | x | MM/DD/YY@ | is date in month, day and year (Date) |
| x | x | x | x | Mode@ | is weld mode (TIME, ENERGY, PKPWR, COL. ABS, G DET) |
| x | x | x | x | tt.ttt@ | length of ultrasonics in seconds (Act. Time) |
| | x | x | x | ppp.p@ | is the peak power in percentage (Peak Power) |
| | x | x | x | eeee@ | is energy in joules (Act. Ener) |
| | | x | x | w.www@ | is absolute distance at end of hold in inches or mm (Total Absolute) |
| | | x | x | z.zzzz@ | is collapse at end of weld in inches or mm (Weld Collapse) |
| | | x | x | x.xxxx@ | is collapse at end of hold in inches or mm (Total Collapse) |
| | | x | x | FFF@ | is the trigger force in pounds or Newton's (Trig. Force) |
| | | | x | AAA@ | is set weld force or force A in pounds or Newton's (Set Force A) |
| | | | x | BBB@ | is set force B in pounds or Newton's or N/A (Set Force B) |
| | | x | x | hhh@ | is the weld force in pounds or Newton's (Weld Force) |
| x | x | x | x | sfff@ | is frequency change (Hz) from start of ultrasonics to end (Freq. Chg) |
| x | x | x | x | aaa@ | is the set amplitude (or amplitude A) in percentage (Set AmpA) |
| | x | x | x | bbb@ | is the set amplitude B in percentage or N/A (Set AmpB) |
| | | x | x | vv.v | is the velocity in/sec or mm/sec (Act. Vel) |
| | | x | x | CRLF | Carriage Return and Line Feed characters |
| x | x | x | x | @ | is either a space, tab or comma as selected by user |
| x | x | x | x | IDID | is a 4 digit # assigned by "welder Addr" in system configuration |

6.11.36 Pressure Step Down

If the Pressure Step Down function is set to On, the system will allow Step Pressure and Hold Pressure settings to be lower than the Weld pressure setting. See [6.10.15 Step Pressure](#) and [6.10.19 Hold Pressure](#) for more information.

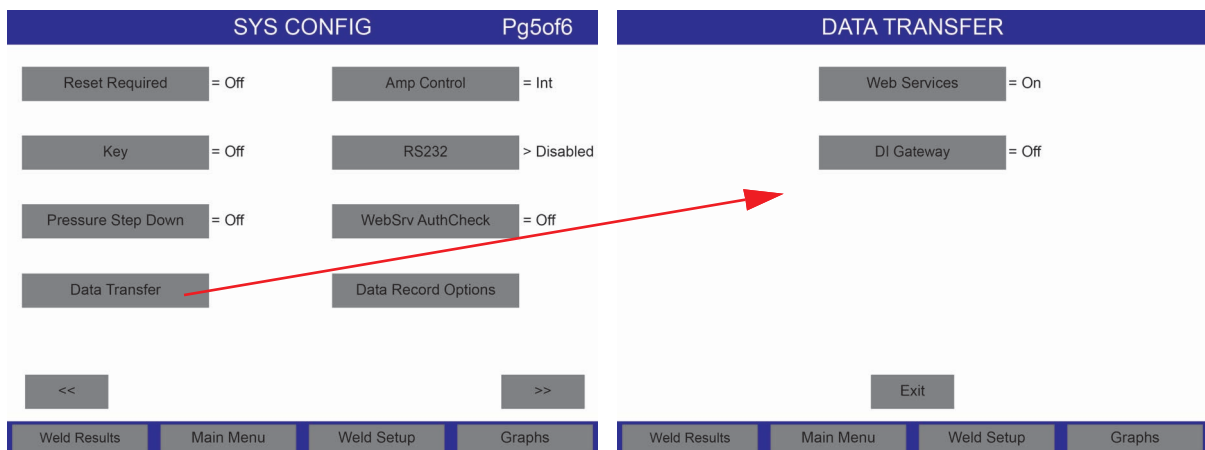
| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Weld alarms may occur when setting Pressure Step Down to On. If Trigger Lost or other nuisance alarms happen after a step-down pressure, they will be ignored and not reported</p> |

6.11.37 WebSrv Automation

Set to ON when Web Services are used in automation and an operator log in is not required.

6.11.38 WebSrv AuthCheck

Authority check ensures that users logging into the power supply only have access to features dependent on their authority level. Set to Yes to enable authority level functions when using Web Services. See [6.11.22 Authority Check](#) for more information.



| SYS CONFIG | | Pg5of6 | DATA TRANSFER | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|------------|-------------------|-----------|
| Reset Required = Off | Amp Control = Int | | Web Services = On | |
| Key = Off | RS232 > Disabled | | DI Gateway = Off | |
| Pressure Step Down = Off | WebSrv AuthCheck = Off | | | |
| Data Transfer | Data Record Options | | | |
| << | >> | | Exit | |
| Weld Results | Main Menu | Weld Setup | Graphs | |
| | | | Weld Results | Main Menu |
| | | | Weld Setup | Graphs |

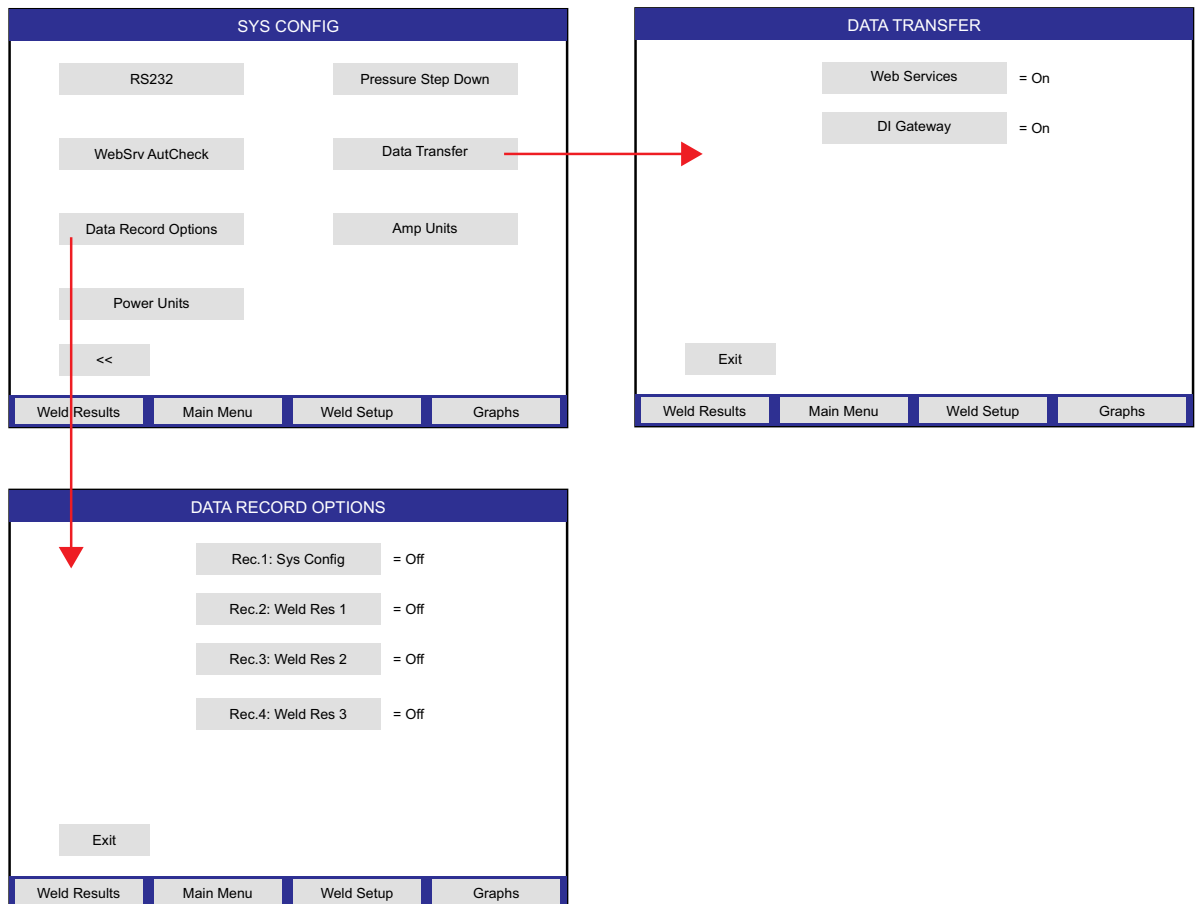
6.11.39 Digital Interface Gateway

6.11.39.1 Introduction

A Digital Interface Gateway (DIG) can be connected to the 2000Xc via its Ethernet interface for exchanging machine data.


For setup see the Branson Data Interface Gateway User Manual (DIG-UM) 1026686.

Figure 6.55 Setting up the Digital Interface Gateway




6.11.39.2 Data Transfer

Set DI Gateway to ON to transfer machine information to DIG.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>To enable DIG functionality it is required that setup has been done according to DIG User Manual.</p> |

6.11.39.3 Data Record Options.

Set each record to ON to update corresponding data on the DIG each weld cycle. To learn more about the record information see the section Data Records on DIG User Manual.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Rec 1 will be updated only once after the first weld cycle subsequent to enable DIG functionality on previous section has been done. |

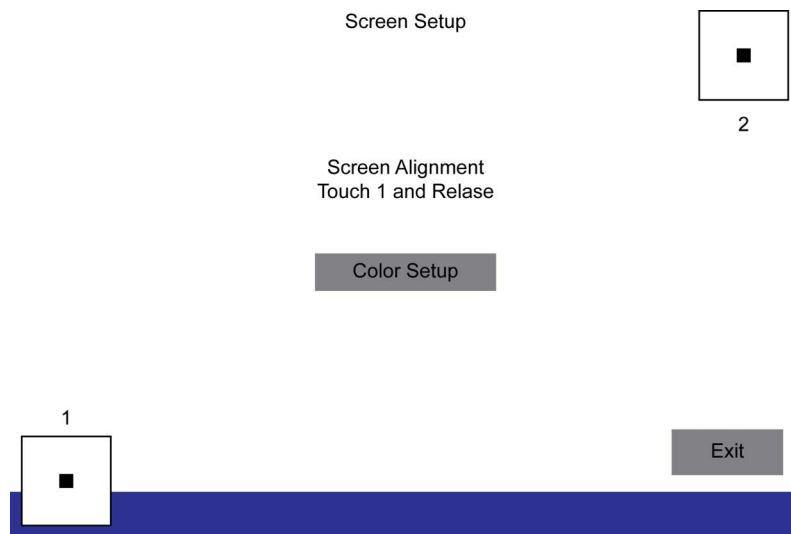
6.12 Screen Setup

Use this feature if you find a need to recalibrate the touch areas for the buttons on the screen.

To calibrate screen touch position, press and release the button marked 1. If it changes to green, the first part of the calibration is successful. Then press and release button 2 to complete the recalibration of the screen. It will also indicate a successful procedure by changing to green. If either button does not result in a change to green, repeat procedure.

Press the *Done* button to return to the Main Menu.

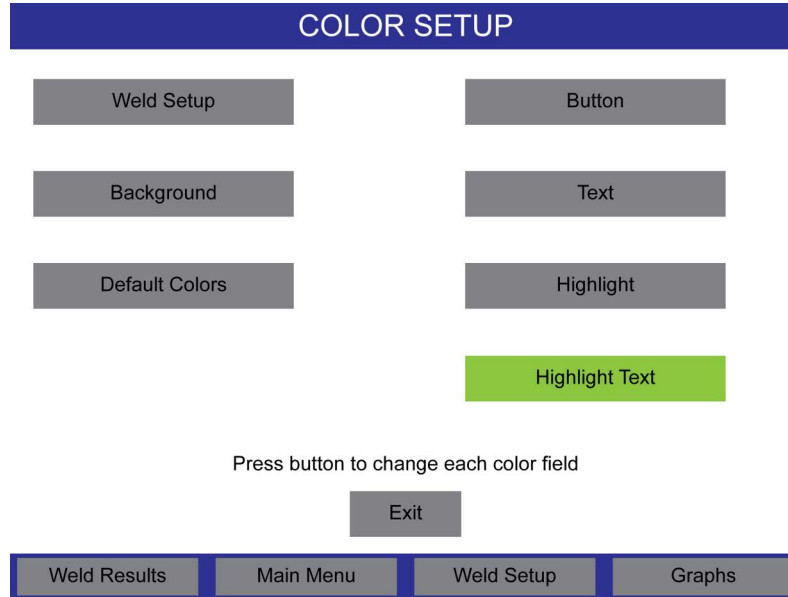
Figure 6.56 Screen Setup



6.12.1 Color Setup

The Color Setup screen allows you to change colors for the Title Bar, Buttons, Background, Text, and Highlight. Pressing the buttons will cycle through several colors you can select from. User can revert back to default colors by pressing the *Default Colors* button.

Figure 6.57 Color Setup



6.13 System Information

You can view information from the System Information screen about the current setup of your System. This screen should be available whenever you are calling Branson for troubleshooting help.

Software upgrade can be performed from this screen.

Figure 6.58 System Information

| SYSTEM INFORMATION | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| PS Life = 968250 | Overloads = 5417 |
| Gen Alarm = 55531 | 30KHz1500W |
| Calibration = Pass | Date Run = 01/13/15 |
| P/S = Digital | P/S Version = 1.91 |
| Actuator = AEC | Control Level = c |
| S/W Version = 12.EOW | P/S S/N = XVD14103159 |
| P/S Assembly # = DEFAULT | Act S/N = 14105957 |
| Actuator Assembly # = DEFAULT | Welder Addr = Off |
| Cyl Stroke = 4.0(in) | Cyl Dia = 2.0(in) |
| Stack Assembly # = DEFAULT | P/S IP = 10.218.196.34 |
| SBC Version = 12.I.2 | SBC MAC = 000BAB827EE4 |
| P/S MAC = 001EC0AD555D | SBC IP = 10.218.196.33 |
| Used ID = N/A | |
| <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> Exit S/W Upgrade </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-top: 10px;"> Weld Results Main Menu Weld Setup Graphs </div> | |

Table 6.28 System Information

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PS Life | Counter for the lifetime number of cycles that have been processed through the power supply. |
| Gen Alarm | Counter for the lifetime number of alarms that have been addressed on the power supply. |
| Calibration | Indicates either Pass, Fail, or Factory. |
| P/S | Analog or Digital. |
| Actuator | Displays the actuator type. |
| S/W Version | Displays the power supply software version number. |
| P/S Assembly | Displays the power supply assembly number. |
| Actuator Assembly # | Displays the actuator assembly number. |
| Cyl Stroke | Displays the maximum cylinder stroke for all standard diameter cylinders. |
| Stack Assembly # | Displays the stack assembly number. |
| SBC Version | Displays the software version of the Single Board Computer that controls the display. |
| P/S MAC | Displays the power supply MAC address. |

Table 6.28 System Information

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| User ID | Displays the user ID name. |
| Overloads | Counter for lifetime number of overloads encountered on the power supply. |
| Frequency and Power | Displays the power supply frequency and power in watts. |
| Date Run | Displays current date. |
| P/S Version | Displays the power supply version. |
| Control Level | Displays the control level (C). |
| P/S S/N | Displays the power supply serial number. |
| Act S/N | Displays the actuator serial number. |
| Welder Addr | Turn on to assign a unique trackable number to a welder for data collection. |
| Cyl Dia | Displays the cylinder diameter. |
| P/S IP | Displays the power supply IP. |
| SBC MAC | Displays the Single Board Computer MAC address. |
| SBC IP | Displays the Single Board Computer IP. |

6.13.1 Software Upgrade


Press the *S/W Upgrade* button to open the Firmware Upload screen. Browse the system files to locate and upload the new firmware file.

Figure 6.59 Firmware Upload

Firmware Upload

Browse...

Upload

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Wait 5 minutes after the message <i>File has been uploaded, wait for system to restart.</i></p> |

6.14 View Current Setup

Displays the current setup, including batch count, pressure limits, actuator assembly number, power supply assembly number, stack assembly number, flow control, rapid traverse distance, hold pressure, weld pressure, trigger type, trigger distance.

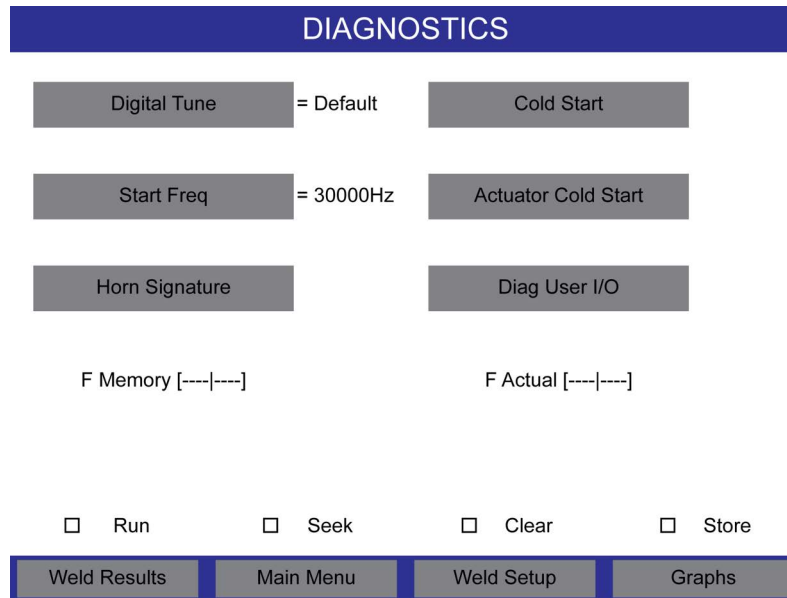
Figure 6.60 View Current Setup

| VIEW CURRENT SETUP | | Pg1of5 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| Weld Mode = Time | Hold Time = 1.000s | |
| Weld Time = 1.000s | Afterburst = Off | |
| Weld Trigger = Force | Afterburst Delay = 0.100s | |
| Trigger Force = 10lb | Afterburst Time = 0.100s | |
| Amplitude = 80% | Afterburst Amplitude = 100 | |
| Pretrigger = Off | Energy Braking = Off | |
| Pretrigger Amplitude = 100% | Post Weld Seek = Off | |
| External U/S Delay = Off | Frequency Offset = Off | |
| | Digital Tune = Default | |
| | Test Amplitude = 10% | |
| | Actuator Clear Output = Off | |
| | Distance = 0.1250in | |
| Cycle Aborts = Off | | |
| | Exit | >> |
| Weld Results | Main Menu | Weld Setup |
| | | Graphs |

6.15 Diagnostics

You can use the Diagnostic menu to perform a cold start, set the start frequency of your stack, and diagnose your system.

Figure 6.61 Diagnostics




The Diagnostics Screen is divided into 2 sections, upper and lower. The upper section consists of diagnostic parameters. The lower section is refreshed every 250 ms with the following data:

Table 6.29 Diagnostics

| Data | Description |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| F Memory | This bar graph represents the stored frequency at the end of the last cycle. This is the frequency the power supply will start at for the next cycle. |
| F Actual | This bar graph represents the running (natural) frequency of the stack in real time. |
| Run | Indicates that ultrasonic energy is on. |
| Seek | Indicates the power supply is running at 5% amplitude for the purpose of finding the resonant frequency of the stack. |
| Clear | Indicates there was an overload in Run or Test Mode and memory was cleared. |
| Store | Indicates the running frequency of the system is stored into memory at the end of a cycle or at the end of a seek. |

6.15.1 Digital Tune

Press the *Digital Tune* button to toggle between On and Default. This must be set to On in order to set the start frequency.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Do not use this feature unless advised to do so by Branson. It is not required for most applications. |

6.15.2 Start Frequency


Press the Start Freq button to set the start frequency.

6.15.3 Cold Start

Press the Cold Start button to open the Cold Start screen.

A cold start clears the Weld Setup Menu values and restores them to original factory defaults. It is not necessary to perform a cold start during normal operation and servicing, but you might find a cold start helpful when:

- You suspect the system is not operating properly
- You want to make a new setup

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | A cold start may take between 6 seconds and 1 minute depending on when it is done and what actuator and control level is connected. |



| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Using the Cold Start procedures will erase your current setup and some of the Setup parameters in the System Configuration menu. Be sure you have a record of your setup if you want to retain it. Your settings can be saved to a preset. |

Figure 6.62 Cold Start



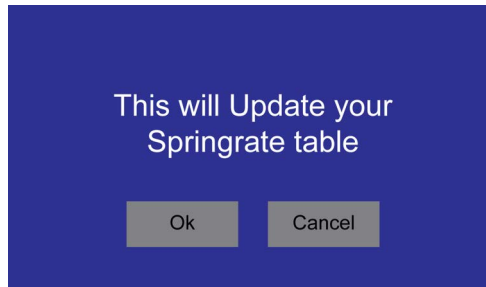
6.15.4 Actuator Cold Start

Press the *Actuator Cold Start* button to open the actuator cold start screen.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Using the Act Cold Start procedures will return the Spring Rate settings to factory default. |

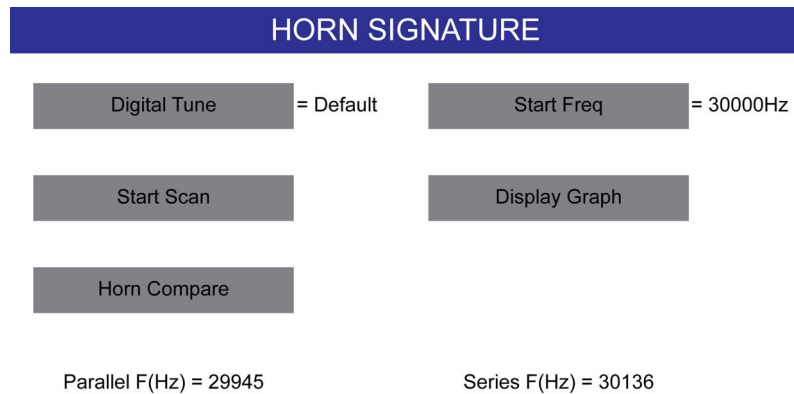
A cold start clears the Spring Rate Table values stored in BBR, and restores them to original factory defaults. It is not necessary to perform an Actuator Cold Start during normal operation and servicing, but you might find a cold start helpful when you are unable to make the system calibrate properly.

Figure 6.63 Actuator Cold Start




6.15.5 Horn Signature

Figure 6.64 Horn Signature



6.15.5.1 Digital Tune

Press the *Digital Tune* button to toggle between On and Default. This must be set to On in order to set the start frequency.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Do not use this feature unless advised to do so by Branson. It is not required for most applications.</p> |

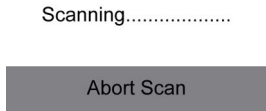
6.15.5.2 Start Frequency

Press the Start Freq button to set the start frequency.

6.15.5.3 Start Scan

Start Scan will generate a scan of horn reactance showing resonant frequencies at the zero crossover from capacitive to inductive reactance. Ideally there will be only one resonant frequency. The screen will display the text "Scanning..." with the rate of update for every dot being 1/4 second.

Figure 6.65 Scanning



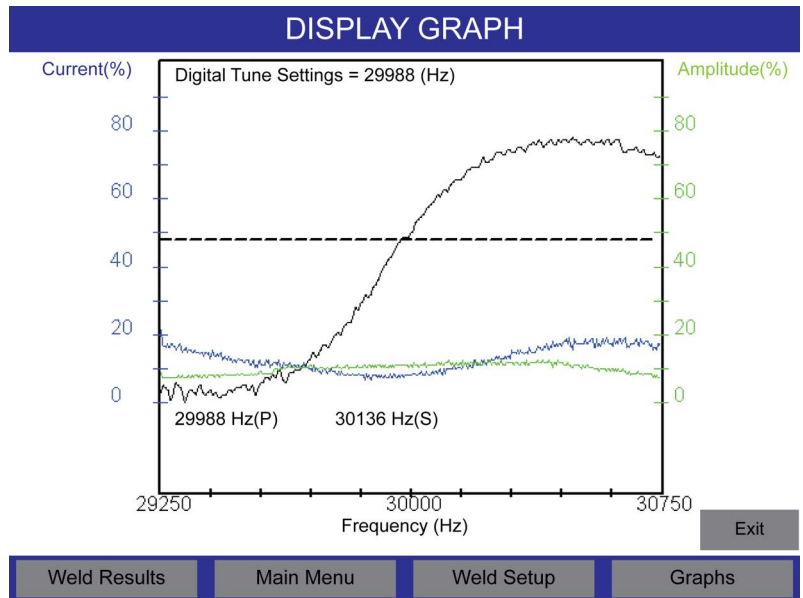
Press the Abort Scan button if you wish to abort the horn signature scan. The result will appear on the screen.

Figure 6.66 Scan Complete

Scan complete
Parallel F(Hz) = 29988

You can view a graph of these reactance values by pressing the *Display Graph* button.

Figure 6.67 Horn Signature Graph

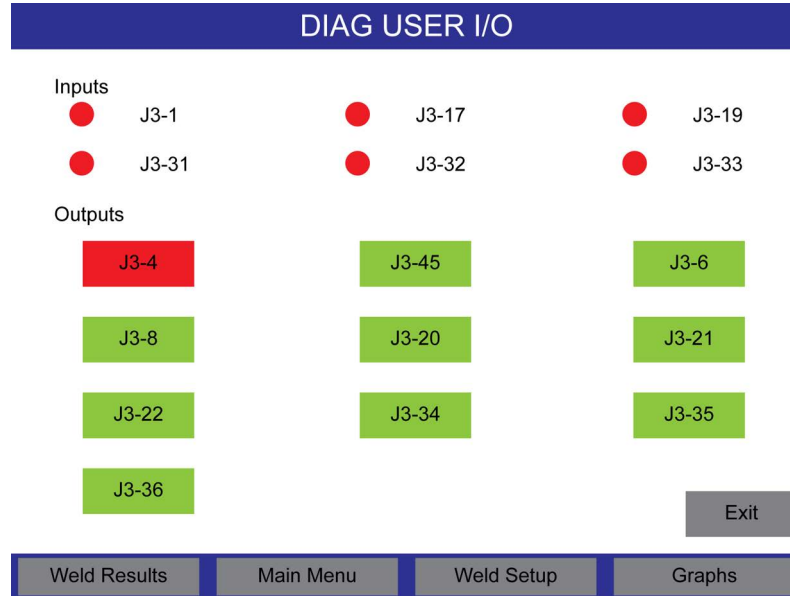



6.15.6 Diagnostic User I/O


This screen is updated at the rate of once per second. When input is not active, the circle (LED) color is red. When the input is active, the circle (LED) color is green for that particular input pin.

User Outputs will be displayed as buttons with red/green colors. Button will be displayed as red if the output is currently not active. If user press the button to turn the output active then the button color will change to green.

Figure 6.68 Diagnostic User I/O



| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Diagnostic User I/O function is used to test the pin connection and not functionality.</p> |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The operation of SV output can only be tested while palm buttons are being held.</p> |

6.16 Horn Down

Use Horn Down to verify that your fixture is properly set up or to determine the absolute distance that the horn needs to travel to weld your parts. After pressing the *Horn Down* button you can press the start switches, or you can use manual override to bring the horn down to the position you have set without ultrasonic energy on by using the mechanical stop. Once the horn is in position, you can release the start switches in order to verify your setup.

Each time you enter the Horn Down menu, the weld force and downspeed settings are transferred from the weld setup.

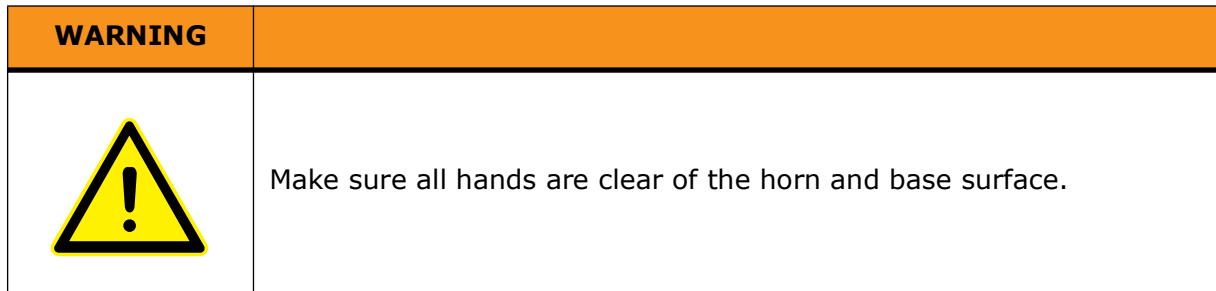
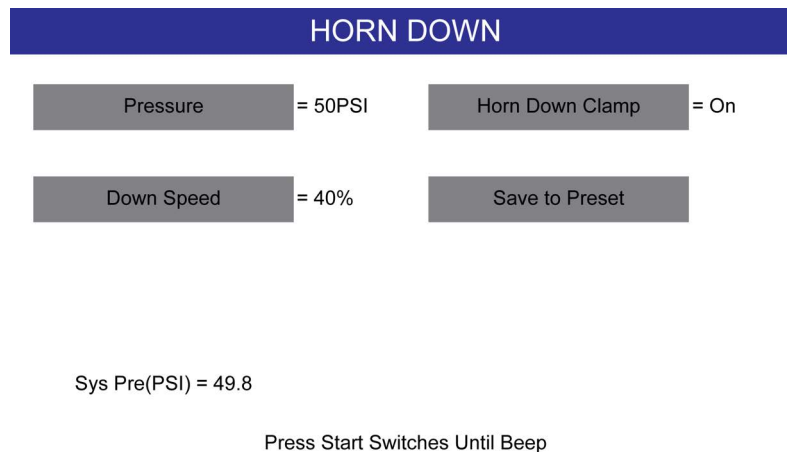


Figure 6.69 Horn Down



Turning the Horn Down Clamp On will cause the horn to remain at the workpiece when the Start Switches are released, until it is released by pressing the *Weld Results* Button. Pressing *Retract* will bring the horn up, and you will remain in the Horn Down screen.

With *Horn Down Clamp Off*, the horn will only stay down as long as the start switches are held on.

Pressure and downspeed can also be changed from this menu.

Press the *Save to Preset* button to copy the horn down pressure and downspeed to the current preset.

6.17 Weld History

Weld History shows the last 100,000 weld data lines saved in the power supply or USB stick.

When the maximum number of records allowed is reached, the Power Supply will display the message: "History Memory Full".


| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><i>USB Recall</i> and <i>USB Setup</i> buttons are only available when there is a USB stick present.</p> |

Figure 6.70 Weld History

| WELD HISTORY | | | |
|--------------|---------|---------|----------|
| Cycle # | User ID | Part ID | Preset # |
| 45725 | N/A | --- | 2 |
| 45724 | N/A | --- | 1 |
| 45723 | N/A | --- | 1 |
| 45722 | N/A | --- | 1 |
| 45721 | N/A | --- | 1 |
| 45720 | N/A | --- | 1 |
| 45719 | N/A | --- | 1 |
| 45718 | N/A | --- | 1 |

< ^ ^ v v > Exit


Weld Results Main Menu Weld Setup Graphs

Table 6.30 Weld History

| Data | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Cycle # | Pk Pwr (W/%) | Act Press (PSI) | P/S Assem # |
| User ID | Energy (J) | Freq Min (Hz) | Set Amp A (µm/%) |
| Part ID | Velocity (in/s) | Freq Max (Hz) | Hold Force (lb) |
| Preset # | Weld Abs (in) | Freq Start (Hz) | Stack Assem # |
| Preset Rev | Total Abs (in) | Freq End (Hz) | Set Amp B (µm/%) |
| Preset Valid | Weld Col (in) | Freq Chg (Hz) | Time (s) |
| Act Assem # | Total Col (in) | Cycle Time (s) | Weld Force (lb) |

6.18 Save/Recall Presets

You can set up the 2000Xc Power Supply to weld a particular application and then save the settings to a preset. You can do this for up to 1000 presets.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Always set the power supply to the combination of parameter settings that you want to save before entering the Save/Recall Presets menu.</p> |

Pressing the *Presets* button will display the *Save*, *Recall*, *Clear*, *Verify*, *USB Memory*, and *Validation* buttons.


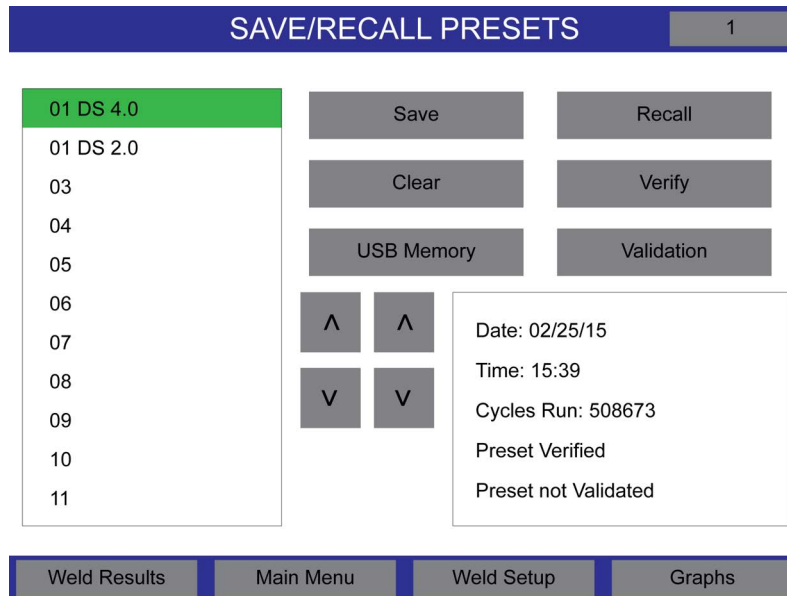
| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p><i>USB Memory</i> button will only show when a USB stick is inserted.</p> |

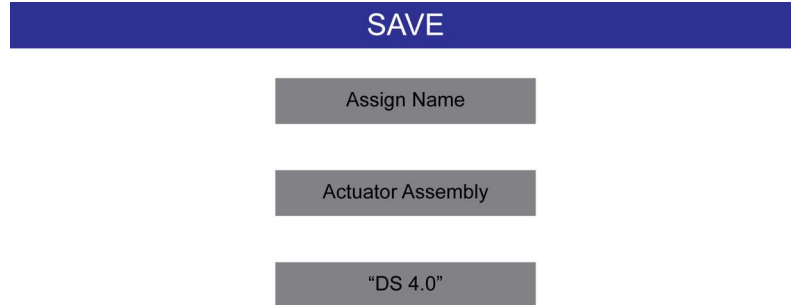
Figure 6.71 Save/Recall Presets



6.18.1 Save Preset

To save a preset, scroll to the desired preset number and press the *Save* button.

Figure 6.72 Save




Press the *Automatically Name* button to save the preset with an automatic generated name.

Table 6.31 Preset Naming Convention


| Mode | Name |
|---------------|-------------|
| Time | Tm = xxxxS |
| Energy | En = xxxxJ |
| Peak Power | PP = xxx% |
| Absolute | Ab = xxx IN |
| Collapse | Cl = xxx IN |
| Ground Detect | GD = xxxS |

Press the *Assign Name* button to type the desired name, using 10 alphanumeric characters.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If the selected preset number has a preset already saved, the overwrite screen will be displayed.</p> |

6.18.2 Recall Preset

To recall a preset, scroll to the desired preset number and press the *Recall* button.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>A preset recall is not allowed if a cycle is in progress.</p> |

6.18.3 Clear Preset

To clear a preset, scroll to the desired preset number and press the *Clear* button.

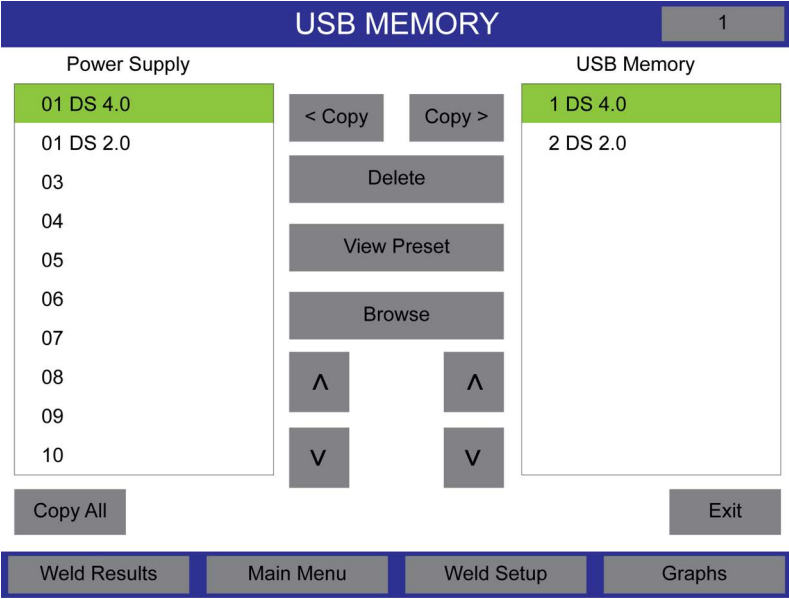
6.18.4 Verify Preset

To verify a preset, scroll to the desired preset number and press the *Verify* button.

6.18.5 USB Memory

Press the *USB Memory* button to save the preset to a USB stick.

Figure 6.73 USB Memory



To copy a preset from the power supply to a USB stick, scroll to the desired preset number under the power supply list and press the *Copy >* button.

To copy a preset from the a USB stick to the power supply, scroll to the desired preset number under the USB Memory list and press the *< Copy* button.

Press the *Delete* button to delete the selected preset on the USB stick.

Press the *View Preset* button to view the current setup before saving.

Press the *Copy All* button to copy all the preset from the power supply to the USB stick.

6.18.6 Validation

To validate a preset, scroll to the desired preset number and press the *Validation* button. Press the *Validate* button to toggle between Validated and Non Validated. A validated preset means that a Supervisor or Executive user has deemed the preset meets the requirements for the current weld. Any change to a validated preset will cause it to become invalidated.

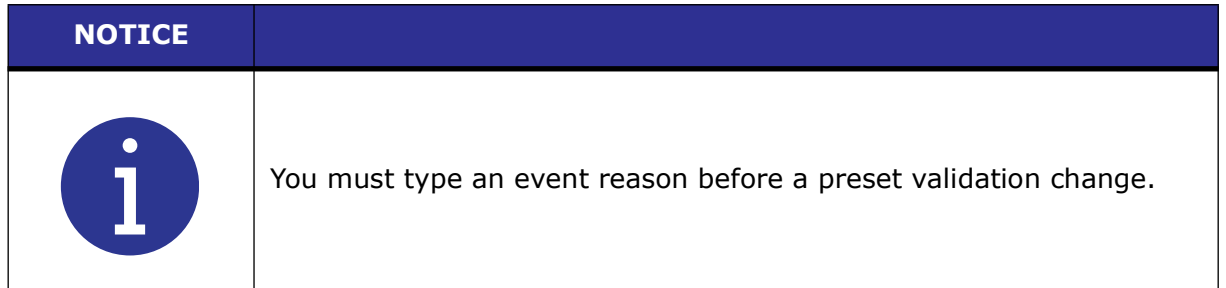
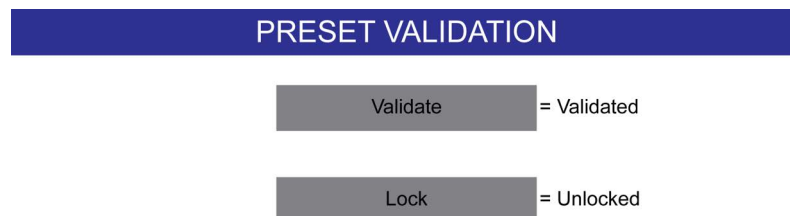


Figure 6.74 Preset Validation

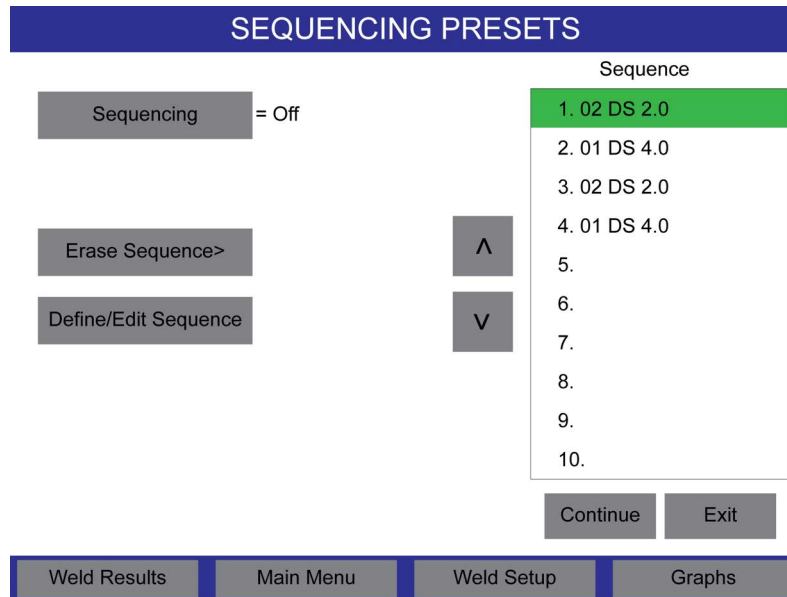


Press the *Lock* button to lock a validated preset. A locked preset can only be modified by Supervisor or Executive users.

6.19 Sequencing Presets

Sequencing presets a list of preset numbers to be run in a defined order. The list contains between 2 and 16 presets. Any non-setup alarm will allow you to restart the sequence or to continue from where the alarm occurred.

Figure 6.75 Sequencing Presets



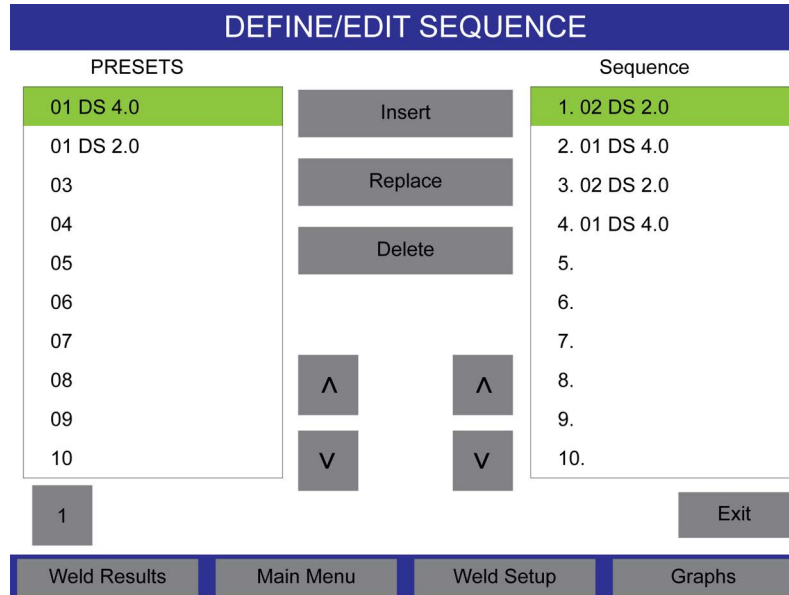
Press the *Sequencing* button to toggle between On or Off.

Press the *Erase Sequence* button to delete the entire sequence.

6.19.1 Define/Edit Sequence

Press the *Define/Edit Sequence* button to define the sequence of presets to run.

Figure 6.76 USB Memory



To insert a preset from the power supply to the sequence list, scroll to the desired preset number under the Presets list and press the *Insert* button. The preset will be inserted in the selected sequence number.

To replace a preset from the sequence, scroll to the desired preset number under the Presets list and press the *Replace* button. The preset will replace the selected sequence number.

Press the *Delete* button to delete the selected sequence number.

6.20 Calibration

Use the Calibration Menu to calibrate the pressure sensor and force readout of the S-Beam load cell. The actuator calibration may be required when changing the booster, horn, or regulator pressure. You will be prompted to perform the actuator calibration the first time you power up the system, or any time the controls sense a significant change in the stack weight greater than five pounds. The sensor calibration is set at the factory and should be good for the life of the system. But if you are operating under regulatory requirements, calibrate the sensors according to their schedule and Branson standards. For more detailed information on calibrating the sensors, you can contact Branson by calling the Technical Support as indicated in [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#).



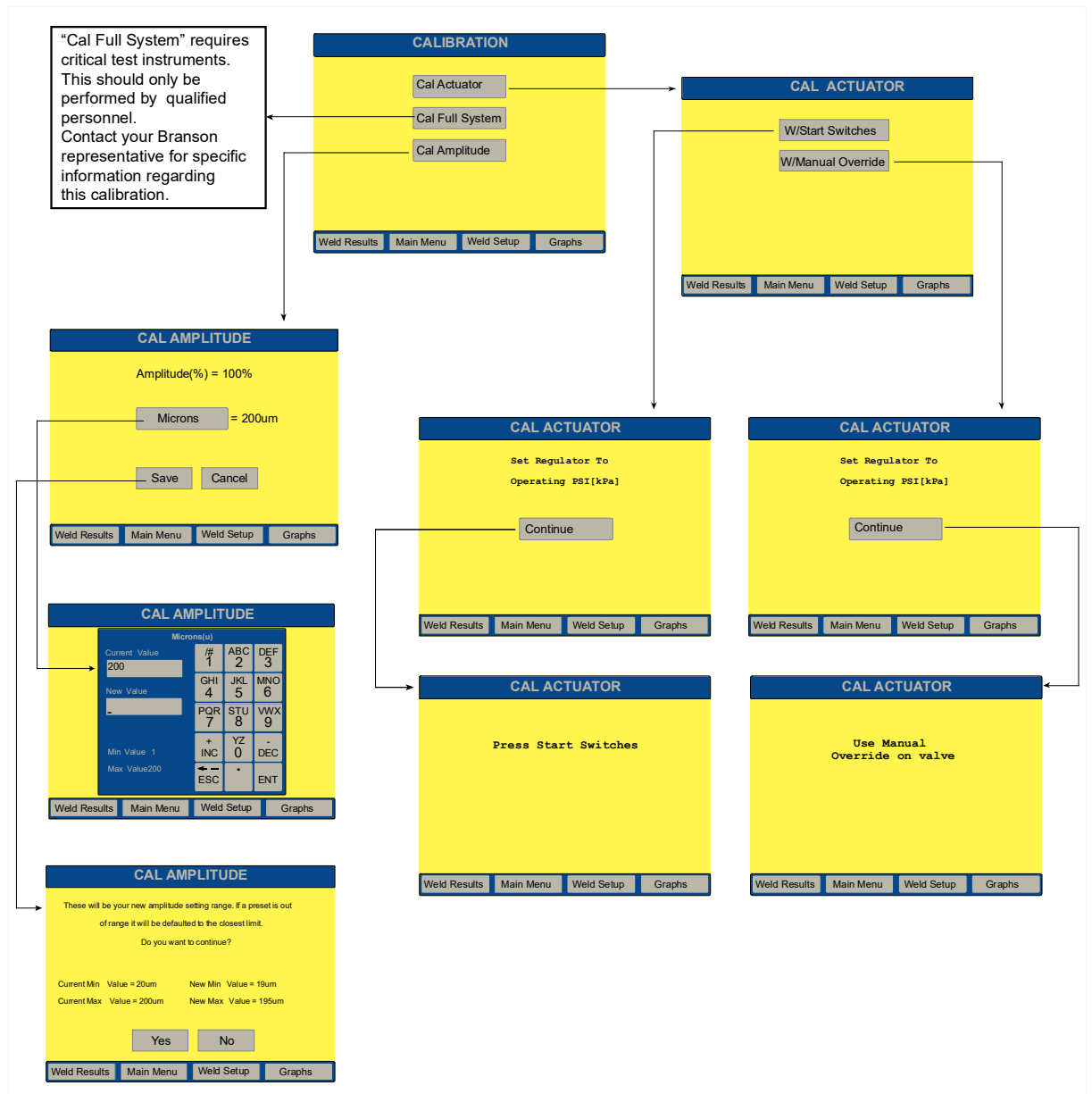
| WARNING | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Before continuing, make sure all hands are away from the Horn and base surface. The horn will accelerate rapidly to the base surface no matter which screen you are in. |
| NOTICE | |
|  | Velocity is not to be used for validation. |

Figure 6.77 Calibration

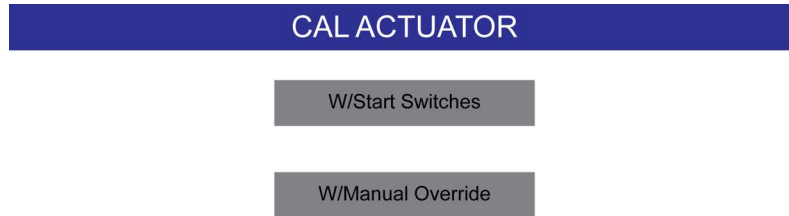


6.20.1 Cal Actuator


Press the *W/Start Switches* button to perform the calibration using the start switches.

Press the *W/Manual Override* button to perform the calibration using the manual override on valve.

Figure 6.78 Cal Actuator



6.20.2 Call Full System

| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Cal Full System requires critical test instruments. This should only be performed by qualified personnel. Contact your Branson representative for specific information regarding this calibration.</p> |

6.20.3 Cal Amplitude

Figure 6.79 Cal Amplitude

The figure consists of three screenshots of the "CAL AMPLITUDE" menu, connected by arrows to show a sequence of steps:

- Initial State:** The menu shows "Amplitude(%) = 100%". Below this, there is a "Microns" field with a value of "200um". At the bottom are "Save" and "Cancel" buttons.
- Input Screen:** After pressing "Save", the menu displays a numeric keypad for "Microns(u)". The "Current Value" is 200. The keypad includes digits 0-9, function keys like "#", "ABC", "DEF", "GHI", "JKL", "MNO", "PQR", "STU", "VWX", "YZ", "DEC", "ESC", and "ENT".
- Confirmation Screen:** After entering a new value, the menu displays a confirmation message: "These will be your new amplitude setting range. If a preset is out of range it will be defaulted to the closest limit. Do you want to continue?". It shows the current and new min/max values:

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Current Min Value = 20um | New Min Value = 19um |
| Current Max Value = 200um | New Max Value = 195um |

 At the bottom are "Yes" and "No" buttons.

6.21 USB

Use this menu to copy Weld History, Weld Setup, Event History, and User ID Table in PDF format to the attached USB stick and to access the streaming data setup.

Figure 6.80 USB



6.21.1 Copy Now

Press the *Weld History*, *Weld Setup*, *Event History*, or *User ID Table* button to copy the related data to the attached USB stick.

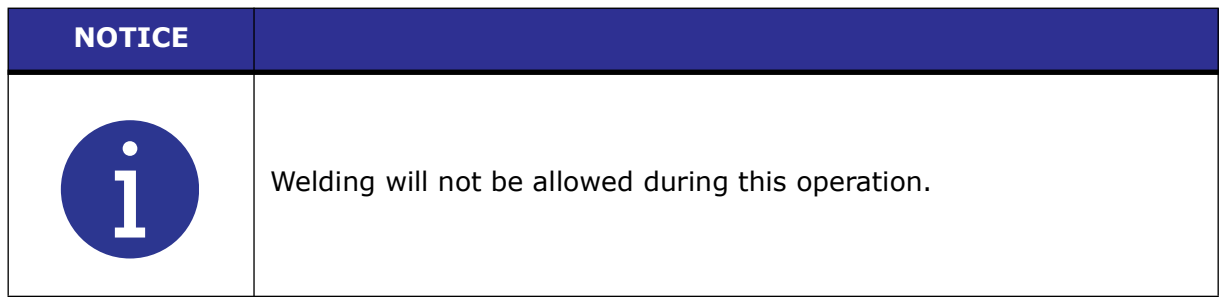


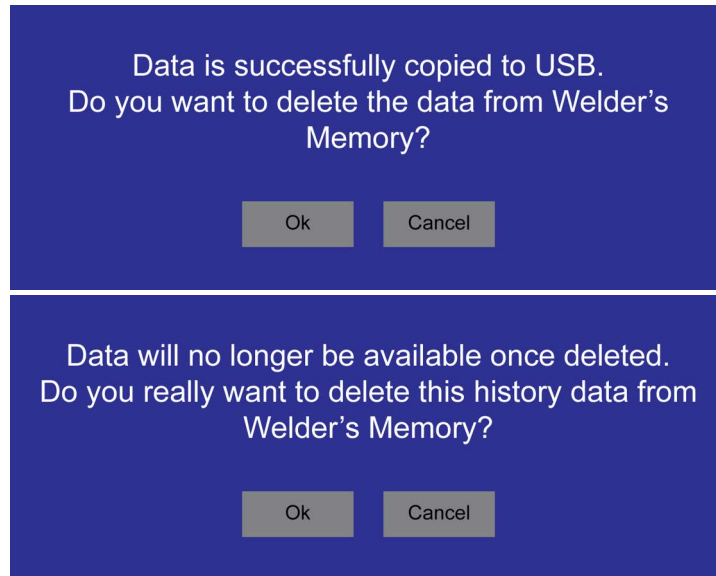
Figure 6.81 Copy Now



The PDF data will be saved in a folder named after the power supply serial number. The date of the file is generated when the file is saved to the USB stick.

A message will let the user know whether the requested data has been successfully copied or not. A Supervisor or Executive user can delete the Weld History and Event History data from the power supply after the data has been successfully copied to the USB stick. You need to confirm the action two times before deleting the data from the power supply.

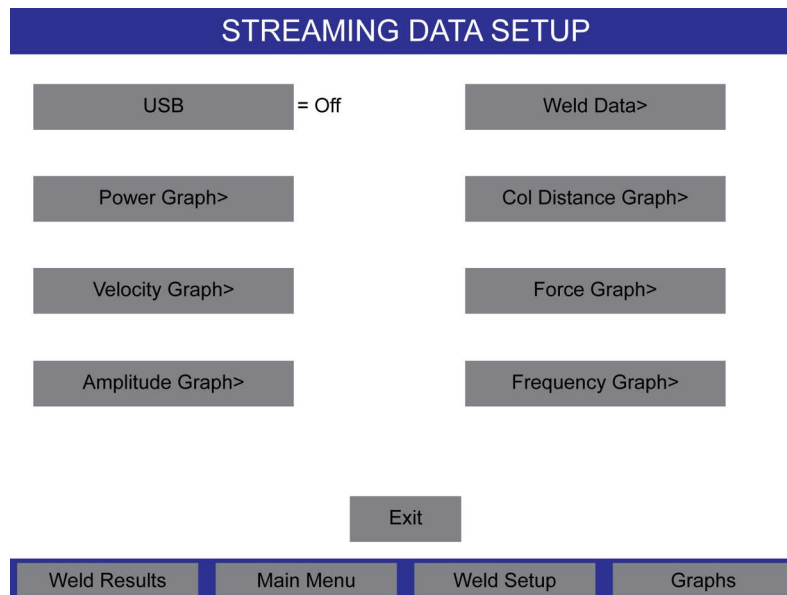
Figure 6.82 Delete Data



6.21.2 Streaming Data Setup

Use this to select which data will be automatically saved to a USB stick and how often the data will be saved.

Figure 6.83 Streaming Data Setup



6.22 Alarm Log

Displays the alarm log. See [Appendix B: Alarms](#) for more information.

Figure 6.84 Alarm Log

| ALARM LOG | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| Alarm# | Date | Time | Alarm ID | Cycle # |
| 45725 | 03/26/15 | 12:34:14 | 609 | 0 |
| 45724 | 03/26/15 | 12:33:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45723 | 03/26/15 | 12:32:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45722 | 03/26/15 | 12:31:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45721 | 03/26/15 | 12:30:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45720 | 03/26/15 | 12:29:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45719 | 03/26/15 | 12:28:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45718 | 03/26/15 | 12:27:14 | 633 | 0 |

Table 6.32 Alarm Log

| Data | Description |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Alarm# | Alarm number. |
| Date | Date when alarm was logged. |
| Time | Time when alarm was logged. |
| Alarm ID | Alarm ID associated with an event. |
| Cycle# | Weld cycle number during which alarm was logged. |
| User ID | User ID at the time of alarm. |
| Preset# | Preset number at the time of alarm. |
| Rev Num | Preset revision number at the time of alarm. |
| Act Assem# | Actuator assembly number. |
| P/S Assem# | Power supply assembly number. |

6.23 Event History

Displays the event history log. See [Appendix C: Events](#) for more information.

Figure 6.85 Event History

| EVENT HISTORY | | | | |
|---------------|----------|----------|-------------|---------|
| Event# | Time | Date | P/S S/N | User ID |
| 819 | 12:34:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 819 | 12:33:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 817 | 12:32:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 816 | 12:31:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 815 | 12:30:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 814 | 12:29:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 813 | 12:28:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |
| 812 | 12:27:14 | 03/26/15 | XVD14103159 | N/A |

< ^ ^ v v >
Details Exit

Weld Results Main Menu Weld Setup Graphs

Table 6.33 Event History

| Name | Description |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| Event# | Event number. |
| Time | Time when event was logged. |
| Date | Date when event was logged. |
| P/S S/N | Power supply serial number. |
| User ID | User ID at the time of event. |
| Preset# | Preset number at the time of event. |
| New Rev | New revision. |

Press the *Details* button to see a description and reason for the selected event.

6.24 Login

The 2000Xc is shipped with the following default user ID and password:

User: ADMIN

Password: 123456Aa#

The first time logging in you will need to enter this user ID and password. The system will ask you to create a new password for the user ADMIN after your first time log in.

The login screen will come up at power up or every time a user presses the login button on the Main menu.




| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Keep a record of your password and user ID. |
| NOTICE | |
|  | Create multiple Executive level users for backup. |
| NOTICE | |
|  | The current logged in user can be viewed in the Main Menu's System Information screen. |

Figure 6.86 Login

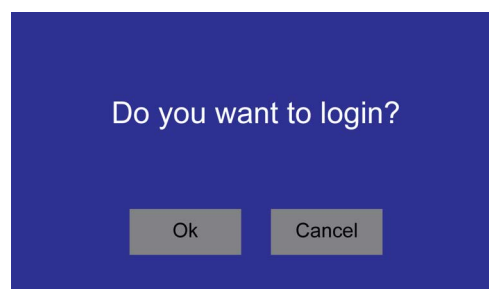


Figure 6.87 Login

LOGIN

User ID

Password

Login

6.24.1 Change Password

After logging in the for the first time, you will be prompted to change your password.

Figure 6.88 Change Password

CHANGE PASSWORD


User ID = FER

Old Password

New Password

Confirm Password

Exit Save

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Password must have at least one capital letter, one number and one small letter and one special character available. The minimum length of the password must be of 8 character and max is 10 character. |

6.24.2 Password Recovery

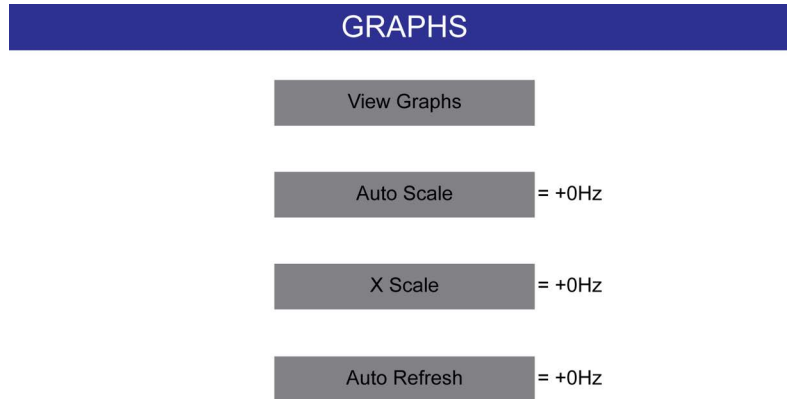
In the event an Executive level user cannot log into the system, the PRK (Password Recovery Kit) can be used to disable the Authority Check and recover the Executive user's password and ID. The PRK is a dongle that plugs into the back of the 2000Xc power supply. It can be ordered from Branson. EDP number is 101-063-1089.


- Power down the 2000Xc power supply
- Plug the PRK into the I/O connector located in the back of the power supply
- Power up the 2000Xc power supply
- The Authority check is now set to No and users are not restricted by authority levels or passwords
- Navigate to the System Configuration/User ID table to Enable a user Executive account and view the user ID and password
- Set Authority Check back to Yes
- Unplug the PRK, power down

6.25 Graphs

Access the View Graphs screen to display the graphs of 6 available parameters: Power, Amplitude, Velocity, Frequency, Force, and Collapse Distance.

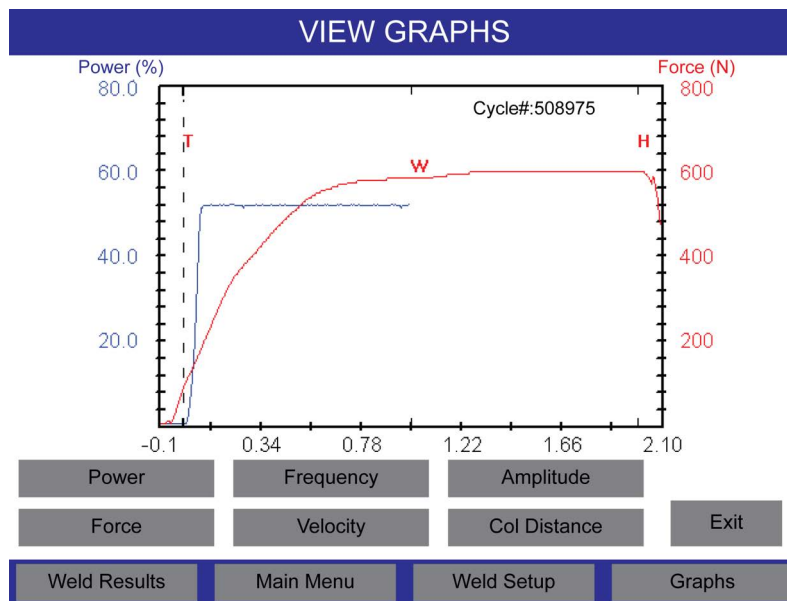
Figure 6.89 Graphs



| NOTICE | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>X Scale = *** when Auto Scale is set to On.</p> |

Press the View Graphs button to display the graph.

Figure 6.90 View Graph





Chapter 7: Actuator Operation

| | | |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|------------|
| 7.1 | Actuator Controls | 190 |
| 7.2 | Initial Actuator Settings | 192 |
| 7.3 | Operating the Actuator | 195 |
| 7.4 | Safety Circuit Alarms | 196 |


7.1 Actuator Controls


This section describes how to operate a weld cycle using the 2000Xc Actuator. For more detailed information on making and altering settings, refer to your 2000Xc Power Supply manual.



| WARNING | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When setting up and operating the Actuator, observe the following precautions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep hands away from under the horn. Down force (pressure) and ultrasonic vibrations can cause injury |

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Plastic parts can vibrate within the audible frequency range when welded. If this occurs, use hearing protectors to prevent possible injury. Do not allow the ultrasonically activated horn to touch a metal base or a metal fixture.</p> |

The 2000Xc Actuator is controlled by the Power Supply. The Actuator sends operating cycle data (such as velocity and force), status information, and alarm information to the Power Supply. The Power Supply sends operating parameters to the Actuator, determining how and when weld cycles are initiated and terminated. The Actuator passes distance, force, and pressure information continuously to the Power Supply. Refer to [Chapter 6: Power Supply Operation](#) for tuning, testing, setup, and operating instructions.

| WARNING | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When using larger horns, avoid situations where fingers could be pinched between the horn and the fixture. Contact Branson for information on an optional guard.</p> |

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Wear Safety glasses to protect your eyes from debris and dust.</p> |

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The horn, tooling, and/or part can be hot during operation.</p> <p>Avoid touching any of these parts while operating the actuator. Allow a few seconds for the part to cool down, and a few minutes for tooling or horn to cool down.</p> |
| WARNING | |
| Hot Surface | |
|  | <p>The horn, tooling, and/or part can be hot during operation.</p> <p>Avoid touching any of these parts while operating the actuator. Allow a few seconds for the part to cool down, and a few minutes for tooling or horn to cool down.</p> |

7.2 Initial Actuator Settings


The Actuator is controlled by the Power Supply, however there are several functions that are part of the Actuator. These include:

- Factory air source
- Mechanical stop
- Actuator position and height above fixture (horn travel)
- Emergency stop (on base, and provided as a user I/O signal for automation)


Each of these will affect the operation of the actuator.

7.2.1 Regulated Air Pressure and Air Pressure Indicator

When factory air is present, it is delivered to the regulator located in the actuator.

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When factory air is removed from the system, or the dump valve is activated, the Actuator may “settle” to a lower position, since it is held up by the constant air pressure. Be sure to keep your hands and fingers from under the Horn or other pinch points, and use a block of wood or other soft material to block the Horn up to prevent damage to the tooling.</p> |


Set the air to a low pressure setting. In the event something is incorrectly connected, a low air pressure setting will reduce any sudden movement. A typical initial setting is approximately 20-25 psi for a new or unproven setup.

| CAUTION | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Permanent damage to the system and possible injury can result if the Actuator is supplied with factory air above the maximum indicator reading of 100 psig (690kPa). Set the pressure regulator to zero before connecting or disconnecting the factory air supply.</p> |

7.2.2 Factory Air Source


Factory air must be turned on, supplying the actuator's air pressure regulator with air pressure. If factory air is too low (below 35 psi maintained) the actuator will not weld or operate reliably. Factory air is also used to provide cooling air to the converter.

Factory air input may affect weld results for applications requiring more weld pressure buildup.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Factory Air pressure must be greater than the maximum system requirements. The compressed air system must have sufficient capacity to serve all of the systems connected to it. The use of an accumulator may be required to provide continuous air flow.</p> |

7.2.3 Downspeed Control

The Downspeed Control regulates the horn velocity. Downspeed has a significant effect on the force buildup on the workpiece, and hence the quality of the weld.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Set velocity to 1-2"/sec, for an initial setup.</p> |

7.2.4 Actuator Alignment and Height (Horn Travel)

The horn carriage will travel up and down on the actuator's slides. The actuator can also be adjusted up or down on the column. The distance between the fixture and horn should allow easy and ready access and removal of your parts.

- Minimum stroke cannot be less than 1/8"
- Maximum stroke cannot exceed 3-3/4" before part contact to allow for the operation of the dynamic flow through mechanism

Consistent weld results are best measured when the horn travel is more than 1/4 inch, because a shorter distance can be affected by other components of the welding system and a suitable build-up of pressure on the parts.

7.2.5 Mechanical Stop

The Mechanical Stop affects the amount of downward travel the Actuator is allowed to have, up to the full stroke length of the unit. The multi-turn knurled knob to the right of the Stack, on the bottom of the Actuator, is the Mechanical Stop adjustment. The Mechanical Stop has an indicator on the right side of the Actuator, showing a scale of an arbitrary unit of measure.


The Mechanical Stop is designed to stop the Horn from contacting your Fixture in the event your part is missing. It is not a precision measuring device, and it is usually not recommended that this be used as a 'collapse' or other distance weld limiting device. The "missing part" function can also be used to control critical horn to fixture distances.

Initially, set the mechanical stop to allow at least 1/4 inch of Horn travel, but any distance up to the full stroke length is suitable.

To adjust the Mechanical Stop:

Table 7.1 Mechanical Stop

| Step | Action |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Activate the manual dump valve and manually lower the carriage until the horn is just above the fixture. |
| 2 | If the horn does not reach the fixture and has not traveled 4 inches (100 mm), loosen the lock ring fully and turn the mechanical stop-adjusting knob clockwise until the carriage reaches the desired position. If the horn reaches the desired position before contacting the stop, turn the adjusting knob counter-clockwise until the stop contacts the carriage. |
| 3 | Check the height of the horn and make any necessary adjustments to the stop. |
| 4 | When you have reached the setting you want, tighten the lock ring. The lock ring will prevent the mechanical stop adjustment from vibrating loose during operation. |
| 5 | Place a part in the fixture, reset the air pressure, and perform a test weld. |
| 6 | Check that full force develops between the horn and the part. If not, readjust the mechanical stop. |


| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Due to Dynamic Follow Through, do not weld in the last 1/4" of stroke. |

7.2.6 Emergency Stop

The Emergency Stop is a user control that will prevent the actuator and power supply from running, and will also immediately terminate a weld cycle and cause the Horn to retract. It does not remove power from the system. The front panel display of the power supply will indicate that the system is in emergency stop mode when it is. Twist the emergency stop button to reset the system.

7.3 Operating the Actuator

For detailed information about 2000Xc Actuator Controls, refer to [2.5 Actuator Controls and Indicators](#).

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | This equipment is designed to be operated by one (1) person only. |

To operate the 2000Xc Actuator:

Table 7.2 Operating the Actuator

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If your application has been analyzed in the Branson Applications Laboratory, consult the Branson Lab Report for appropriate settings or check Chapter 6: Power Supply Operation . |
| 2 | Properly adjust the mechanical stop so that the horn does not make contact with your fixture. (Refer to 7.2.5 Mechanical Stop for more information on this adjustment). |
| 3 | Ensure that the Emergency Stop button is not pushed in. |
| 4 | With a part in place, depress and hold both start switches simultaneously. |
| 5 | The horn advances and contacts the part. |
| 6 | Force develops between the horn and the part, activating the S-Beam Load Cell. |
| 7 | Ultrasonic vibrations are activated. The power bar graph on the power supply indicates loading (usually in the 25% to 100% range). The start switches can now be released. |
| 8 | Ultrasonics stop and the horn continues to clamp the part for the hold time you selected. |
| 9 | After the completion of the hold cycle, the horn retracts automatically and you can remove the part from the fixture. |
| 10 | Weld a few parts using the initial parameters and check for the desired properties. |

If you do not obtain optimal results initially, based on the quality of the weld obtained and the loading meter reading, you can alter settings to achieve satisfactory results. Change one setting at a time until a weld is produced in minimum time with maximum strength.

7.4 Safety Circuit Alarms

The Safety Control System within the actuator constantly monitors the system's safety related components for correct operation. When this system detects a fault condition, operation is interrupted and the system immediately goes to a safe state. A blinking of the power indicator light is used to signal a safety system alarm.

Use the following procedure to troubleshoot safety circuit alarms:

1. Verify that the 9-pin base cable is properly connected to the start connector located on the back of the actuator.
2. Power down and then power up the power supply to reset the system.
3. If the alarm persists, call Branson Support. See [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#).

Chapter 8: Maintenance


| | | |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 8.1 | Calibration | 198 |
| 8.2 | Periodic and Preventive Maintenance | 199 |
| 8.3 | Parts Lists | 204 |
| 8.4 | Power Supply Parts Lists | 207 |
| 8.5 | Circuits | 210 |
| 8.6 | Troubleshooting | 211 |
| 8.7 | Service Events | 214 |
| 8.8 | Parts Replacement | 216 |


8.1 Calibration


This product does not require scheduled Full System Calibration. However, if you are operating under requirements that mandate periodic calibration, for example, the FDA's Good Manufacturing Practices, you may need to calibrate the equipment according to that schedule and set of standards. Contact your Branson representative for additional information.

For standard actuator calibration, and resetting sensor calibration to factory default settings, refer to [6.20 Calibration](#).

8.2 Periodic and Preventive Maintenance


| WARNING | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use LOTO (Lock Out Tag Out) lockable plug cover over line cord plug during any maintenance. |

| WARNING | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | When performing maintenance on the welder, make sure that no other automated systems are active. |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | A log for recording the maintenance history of the machine should be kept during the machine's life cycle. |

The following preventive measures will help ensure long term operation of your Branson 2000Xc Series equipment.

8.2.1 Periodically Clean the Equipment

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | When it is necessary to clean the touchscreen, wipe gently with a soft cloth dampened with a mild detergent or Windex. Give a final wipe to the entire screen with the soft damp cloth. Under no circumstances should you use solvents or ammonia to clean the screen. Do not use excessive solution to avoid dripping or seeping into the power supply. |


Periodically disconnect the unit from power, remove the cover and vacuum out any accumulated dust and debris. Remove material adhering to the fan blades and motor, transistors, heat sinks, transformers, circuit boards, cooling intake vents, and exhaust ports. Filters can be added to the power supply cooling fans for dusty environments. Periodically disconnect the airline from the air supply, open the air filter and clean the

element and bowl with mild soap and water. External covers may be cleaned with a damp sponge or cloth using a solution of mild soap and water. Do not allow cleaning solution to enter the unit. Exposed steel surfaces, such as handles, hardware and the main column may require a very light film of oil, such as WD-40, to prevent rust in areas of high humidity.

8.2.2 Recondition the Stack (Converter, Booster, and Horn)

Stack components function with greatest efficiency when the mating interface surfaces are in proper condition. For 20 kHz and 30 kHz products, a Branson Mylar washer should be installed between the horn and the booster, and booster and converter. Replace the washer if torn or perforated. We recommend that stacks using Mylar washers be inspected every three months.


Stacks used with silicone grease, as with certain 20 kHz installations and with all 40 kHz products, should be periodically reconditioned to eliminate fretting corrosion. We recommend that a stack using silicone grease be inspected every two weeks for corrosion. The inspection interval can then be adjusted longer or shorter as required, when experience is gained for specific stacks. Refer to the following procedure for correct stack interface reconditioning.


| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The operating efficiency of the equipment will be greatly affected if the mating interfaces of the converter, booster, and horn are not flat, make poor contact with each other, or become corroded. A poor contact condition wastes power and makes tuning difficult. It may also affect the noise level and damage the converter.</p> |

To recondition the interfaces:


1. Remove the stack from the actuator
2. Disassemble the converter, booster, and horn stack. Observe the following rules:

In the event that you must disassemble a Stack, always use the correct spanner wrench and a suitable soft-faced vise to remove a horn or booster, and reverse the procedures described earlier in this Section.


| WARNING | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>NEVER attempt to remove a horn or booster by holding the converter housing or booster clamp ring in a vise.</p> |


| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use a soft-jawed vise (brass or aluminum) to remove square or rectangular horns, or horns otherwise unremovable, by reversing the procedure detailed in 5.8 Assemble the Acoustic Stack . |

3. Wipe the interfaces with a clean cloth or paper towel
4. Examine all interfaces. If any interface is corroded or shows a dark, hard deposit, it should be reconditioned
5. If the interfaces appear to be in good condition, go to step 13
6. If necessary, remove the coupling studs
7. Tape a clean sheet of #400 grit (or finer) emery cloth to a clean, smooth flat surface. A piece of glass is suitable
8. Hold the part to be conditioned at its lower end and carefully stroke it in one direction across the emery cloth. Do not press down. the weight of the component provides enough pressure
9. Perform a second stroke. Rotate the part 1/3 around and stroke it twice across the cloth.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Use no more than two strokes in one position. Use the same number of strokes at each location. |

10. Turn the part the remaining 1/3 and repeat
11. Re-examine the interface and repeat steps 8, 9, and 10 until the surface appears clean and smooth. This should not take more than 2 or 3 complete rotations of the part being reconditioned
12. Clean the threaded hole, using a clean cloth or paper towel
13. Replace the stud with a new one if removed. Torque the 3/8-24 studs to 290 inch pounds (32.77 Nm). Torque 1/2-20 studs to 450 inch pounds (50.84 Nm). Torque M8x1-1/4 studs to 70 inch pounds (7.9 Nm)

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | The use of a Branson torque wrench or the equivalent is recommended. P/N 101-063-787 for 20 kHz systems and 101-063-618 for 40 kHz systems. |

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Failure to follow torque specifications may cause the stud to loosen or break, and the system to overload. The use of a Branson torque wrench or equivalent is required. |

14. Reassemble the stack and install it in the actuator, using the procedures in [5.8 Assemble the Acoustic Stack](#)

8.2.3 Routine Component Replacement

The lifetime of certain parts is based on the number of cycles the unit has completed, or on hours of operation (e.g., at 20,000 hours, cooling fans should be replaced). [Table 8.1](#) lists the average number of hours or cycles one should use in determining when actuator components should be replaced. Ambient operating temperature also affects lifetime. Higher temperatures reduce the number of cycles and hours before replacement is suggested. The charts below are for equipment operating at a temperature of 72 to 75° F (22 - 24° C).

The lifetime of system pneumatic components is influenced by the quality of the compressed air provided. All Branson systems require clean, dry, (normal) factory compressed air. When oil or moisture is present in the compressed air, the lifetime of the pneumatic components will be reduced. This table lists pneumatic parts with an average factory compressed air condition.

Table 8.1 Routine Component Replacement

| Cycles | Component |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| At 10 Million Cycles | Air Cylinder |
| | Hydraulic snubber |
| At 20 Million Cycles | Base Palm Buttons |
| | Solenoid Valves |
| At 40 Million Cycles | Pressure Regulator |
| | Air Filter |
| | Cooling Valve |
| | Rapid Traverse Valve |
| | S-Beam Load Cell Assembly |
| | Encoder Assembly |
| | Linear Bearing (2" stroke or greater) |

For Reference Purposes:

1. A system operating at 60 welds per minute, 8 hours per day, 5 days per week, 50 weeks per year completes approximately 7.2 million cycles in 2000 hours
2. The same system at 24 hours per day, 5 days per week, in 50 weeks completes 21.6 million cycles in 6000 hours
3. 24 hours per day, 365 days per year produces 31.5 million cycles in 8760 hours

Please note that parts replaced during preventive maintenance constitute normal wear and tear. They are not covered by warranty.

8.3 Parts Lists

8.3.1 Actuator Parts Lists

The following tables list the available Accessories and Parts for the 2000Xc Actuator:

Table 8.2 Accessories List for 2000Xc Actuator


| Description | EDP Number |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 2000Xc Power Supply with 1.5-inch diameter cylinder (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 101-134-414 |
| 2000Xc Power Supply with 2.0-inch diameter cylinder (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 101-134-415 |
| 2000Xc Power Supply with 2.5-inch diameter cylinder (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 101-134-416 |
| 2000Xc Power Supply with 3.0-inch diameter cylinder (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 101-134-417 |
| Kit Base Guard (for large horns) | 101-063-550 |
| Inch Leveling Plate | 101-063-358 |
| Metric Ball Bolt (adapts 2000Xc base to leveling plates) | 100-298-085 |
| Metric Leveling Plate | 1015704 |
| CJ20 Acorn (in actuator) | 101-135-059R |
| CA30 Acorn | 101-135-114R |
| 30 kHz Booster Adapter Ring (for use with CA30) | 100-087-283 |
| 4TJ Acorn (in actuator) | 101-135-041R |
| 40 kHz Adapter Sleeve Assy | 100-246-612 |
| Stand-Base 4" OD, 3.5" ID, col, support | 100-246-1314 |
| Stand-Hub, 4" OD, col, support | 100-246-1586 |
| Base, ergo - 4" metric, black | 100-246-1578 |
| Hub, 2000Xc for 4" column | 101-063-583 |
| Support 4" black | 100-246-1311 |
| Column 40" 4.0"ODX3.5"ID x 1/4" wall (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 100-028-021 |
| Column 4'(4.0"ODX3.0"ID) x 1/2" wall (option) (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 100-028-011 |
| Column 6', 4.0"ODX3.0"ID x 1/2" wall (option) (Only for 2000Xc AEC actuator) | 100-028-012 |
| Sleeve, 1/4" wall column | 100-094-159 |
| Sleeve, 1/2" wall column | 100-094-102 |

Table 8.2 Accessories List for 2000Xc Actuator

| Description | EDP Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 20 kHz Series Boosters 1/2-20 Input; 1/2-20 Output | |
| Black (Ti), Ratio 1:2.5 | 101-149-059 |
| Silver (Ti), Ratio 1:2 | 101-149-058 |
| Gold (Ti), Ratio 1:1.5 | 101-149-057 |
| Green (Ti), Ratio 1:1 | 101-149-056 |
| Purple (Ti), Ratio 1:0.6 | 101-149-060 |
| Silver (Al), Ratio 1:2 | 101-149-053 |
| Gold (Al), Ratio 1:1.5 | 101-149-052 |
| Green (Al), Ratio 1:1 | 101-149-051 |
| Purple (Al), Ratio 1:0.6 | 101-149-055 |
| Solid Mount Boosters - 20 kHz - 1/2-20 Input, 1/2-20 Output | |
| Black (Ti), Ratio 1:2.5 | 101-149-099 |
| Silver (Ti), Ratio 1:2 | 101-149-098 |
| Gold (Ti), Ratio 1:1.5 | 101-149-097 |
| Green (Ti), Ratio 1:1 | 101-149-096 |
| Purple (Ti), Ratio 1:0.6 | 101-149-095 |
| Boosters - 30 kHz, for use with CA-30 converter | |
| Black (Ti), Ratio 1:2.5 | 101-149-120 |
| Silver (Ti), Ratio 1:2.0 | 101-149-121 |
| Gold (Ti), Ratio 1:1.5 | 101-149-122 |
| Green (Ti), Ratio 1:1 | 101-149-123 |
| Purple (Ti), Ratio 1:0.6 | 101-149-124 |
| Boosters - 40 kHz (Same as XL: 8 mm) | |
| Black (Ti), Ratio 1:2.5 | 101-149-084 |
| Silver (Ti), Ratio 1:2.0 | 101-149-083 |
| Gold (Ti), Ratio 1:1.5 | 101-149-086 |
| Green (Ti), Ratio 1:1 | 101-149-085 |
| Black (Al), Ratio 1:2.5 | 101-149-082 |
| Silver (Al), Ratio 1:2.0 | 101-149-081R |
| Gold (Al), Ratio 1:1.5 | 101-149-080 |
| Green (Al), Ratio 1:1 | 101-149-079 |
| Purple (Al), Ratio 1:0.6 | 101-149-087 |

Table 8.2 Accessories List for 2000Xc Actuator

| Description | EDP Number |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Solid Mount Boosters - 40 kHz (Same as XL: 8mm) | |
| Black (Ti), Ratio 1:2.5 | 109-041-174 |
| Silver (Ti), Ratio 1:2.0 | 109-041-175 |
| Gold (Ti), Ratio 1:1.5 | 109-041-176 |
| Green (Ti), Ratio 1:1.0 | 109-041-177 |
| Purple (Ti), Ratio 1:0.6 | 109-041-178 |

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When ordering spare cylinders note the cylinder diameter which is found on the actuator door cover and/or on a label on the rear of the actuator.</p> |

8.4 Power Supply Parts Lists

8.4.1 Replacement Parts

Table 8.3 Replacement Parts List for 2000Xc Power Supply

| Component | EDP Number |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DC Power Supply Module* | 200-132-294R |
| Line Board* | 100-242-1199R (100-242-1293R for 4 KW units and 15 kHz 3.3 KW & 100-242-1265R for 30 kHz 1.5 KW 120VAC only) |
| System Controller Board | 102-242-1025R |
| Power Supply Module* | |
| 300W / 20 kHz digital | 100-244-138R |
| 1.25kW / 20 kHz digital | 100-244-102R |
| 2.5kW / 20 kHz digital | 100-244-103R |
| 4kW / 20 kHz digital | 159-244-075R |
| 750W / 30 kHz digital | 100-244-104R |
| 1.5kW / 30 kHz digital | 159-244-065R |
| 400W / 40 kHz digital | 159-244-064R |
| 800W / 40 kHz digital | 159-244-063R |
| Switch, On / Off; 15A; DPST | 1032510, 1032496 |
| Washer, Mylar | |
| Kit 20 kHz, 10 each (1/2 in. and 3/8 in.) | 100-063-357 |
| Kit 20 kHz, 150 each (1/2 in.) | 100-063-471 |
| Kit 20 kHz, 150 each (3/8 in.) | 100-063-472 |
| Kit 30 kHz, 10 each (3/8 in., 30 kHz) | 100-063-632 |
| Fan | 100-126-015R |
| CR2032 Battery for BBRAM | 200-262-003 |
| Cover | 100-032-454 |
| Cover Screws | 200-298-254 (6 ea) 200-298-044 (1 ea) |
| Line Cord | 100-246-1371 (100-246-1727 for 4 KW units, 15 kHz, 30 kHz 1.5 KW 120VAC only) |

Miscellaneous


Other parts such as wrenches, silicon grease, studs, etc., are found in [Chapter 5: Installation and Setup](#).

*Each of these items must be replaced as a unit.

8.4.2 System Cables

Table 8.4 2000Xc Series System Cables (External)

| P/N | Description | Cable Model |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 101-241-202 | Cable, Remote Interface 8' to remote pneumatics package (ao actuator) | J924 |
| 101-241-203 | Cable, Actuator Interface 8' | J925S |
| 101-241-204 | Cable, Actuator Interface 15' | J925S |
| 101-241-205 | Cable, Actuator Interface 25' | J925S |
| 101-241-207 | Cable, User I/O 8' | J957S |
| 101-241-208 | Cable, User I/O 15' | J957S |
| 101-241-209 | Cable, User I/O 25' | J957S |
| 101-240-176 | Cable, RF CR & CJ20 8' EN | J931CS |
| 101-240-177 | Cable, RF CR & CJ20 15' EN | J931CS |
| 101-240-178 | Cable, RF CR & CJ20 25' EN | J931CS |
| 100-246-630 | Cable, Ground Detect | - |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Cables identified for 'CJ-20 Converters' are for those Converters when they are installed in Branson 2000Xc Actuators. The cable connects to the actuator.</p> |

8.4.3 Suggested Spares

Table 8.5 Suggested Spares

| Description | EDP # | 1-4 Units | 6-12 Units | 14+ Units |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| Replacement 2000Xc Controller Board | 102-242-1025R | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 kw power supply module (20 kHz) | 159-244-075R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 2.5 kw power supply module (20 kHz) | 100-244-103R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 1.25 kw power supply module (20 kHz) | 100-244-102R | 0 | 0 | 1 |

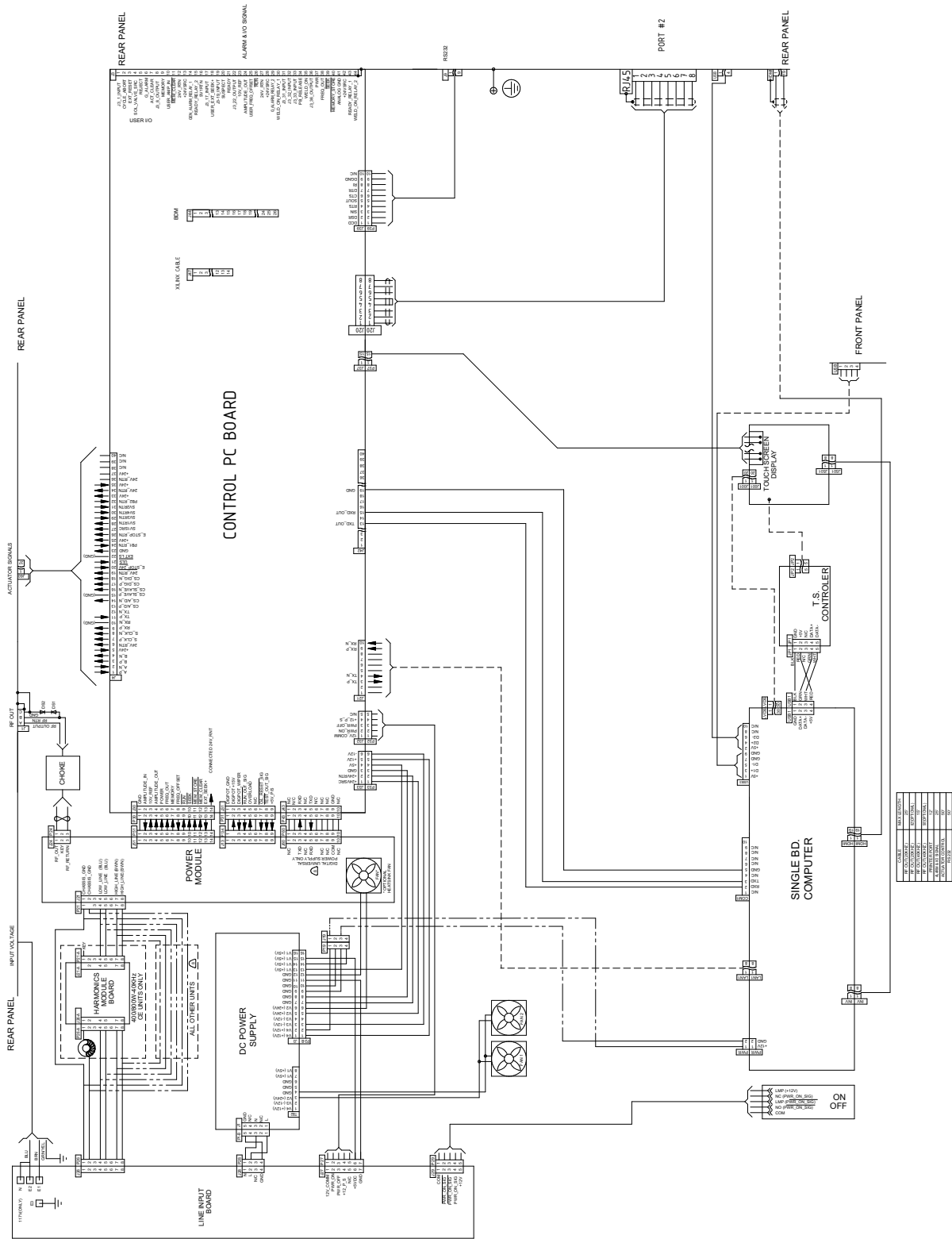
Table 8.5 Suggested Spares

| Description | EDP # | 1-4 Units | 6-12 Units | 14+ Units |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| 1.5 kw power supply module (30 kHz) | 159-244-065R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 800 w power supply module (40 kHz) | 159-244-063R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| On/Off switch | 1032510 1032496 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| AC/DC power supply | 200-132-294R | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| Line Board (4kw, 3.3kw only) | 100-242-1293R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Line Board | 100-242-1199R (100-242-1265R for 30 kHz 1.5 KW 120VAC only) | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Fan | 100-126-015R | 0 | 2 | 4 |
| 2000xc system controller board kit | 101-063-1086 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| SBC kit | BU-1038055 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Touchscreen display | BU-1039125 BU-1039127 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Touchscreen controller board | BU-1039128 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| SBC (Single Board Computer) | BU-1039121 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| VGA touchscreen keypad | 100-242-926R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| USB cable assembly (2 USB) | BU-1035795 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| SBC Repair kit* | BU-1040856 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Programmed SSD card kit* | BU-1040858 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Battery (system controller board) | 200-262-003 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| Line cord assembly | 100-246-1371 (100-246-1727 for 4 KW units, 15 kHz, 30 kHz 1.5 KW 120VAC only) | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Harmonics module (40 kHz only) | 100-242-1311R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| RF Harness | 100-246-949R | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Fan Guard | 200-208-046 | 0 | 2 | 2 |

*These kits will include latest software version. For a specific software version, contact Customer Support.


8.5 Circuits

Figure 8.1 Interconnect Diagram, EDP 933-132-2023



8.6 Troubleshooting

When the 2000Xc Power Supply encounters a situation that is outside of the normal conditions, an alarm is generated. If there is any alarm condition, the Front Panel displays the number of alarms and generates an audible alarm. Pressing the Alarm button will display a message for corrective action. Some types of alarms have a secondary button to press to address the alarm. If no additional information is displayed, refer to the System Alarm Tables.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The power supply MUST be set to the correct cylinder size for the actuator to function properly.</p> <p>The regulator will click as it is regulating or maintaining a pressure setting. If there is excessive noise, the supply pressure to the regulator maybe too low for the requested setting.</p> |

If you use the emergency stop button on the actuator to terminate a weld, twist the button to reset it. (The welder will not operate until this button is reset) You must then press Reset at the power supply.

Figure 8.2 Alarm Signal Displayed on the System Information Screen

SYSTEM INFORMATION

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| PS Life = 968250 | Overloads = 5417 |
| Gen Alarm = 55531 | 30KHz1500W |
| Calibration = Pass | Date Run = 01/13/15 |
| P/S = Digital | P/S Version = 1.91 |
| Actuator = AEC | Control Level = c |
| S/W Version = 12.EOW | P/S S/N = XVD14103159 |
| P/S Assembly # = DEFAULT | Act S/N = 14105957 |
| Actuator Assembly # = DEFAULT | Welder Addr = Off |
| Cyl Stroke = 4.0(in) | Cyl Dia = 2.0(in) |
| Stack Assembly # = DEFAULT | P/S IP = 10.218.196.34 |
| SBC Version = 12.1.2 | SBC MAC = 000BAB827EE4 |
| P/S MAC = 001EC0AD555D | SBC IP = 10.218.196.33 |
| Used ID = N/A | |

Exit


S/W Upgrade


Weld Results

Main Menu

Weld Setup


Graphs

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If you have been directed to this Section from an alarm message on the power supply screen, go directly to the table for the alarm type specified in the message. Location of the alarm tables is detailed in the following text.</p> |

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>If you experience an Operating System error message, please turn the power supply off (Wait 30 Seconds), and then turn the power supply on again, this will initiate a restart sequence for the Operating System. If the Operating System error persists, please contact Branson Product Support by calling the appropriate department as indicated in 1.4 How to Contact Branson.</p> |

This section details the alarm conditions that you can encounter while using the 2000Xc Power Supply. There are eight classes of alarms: Cycle Modified, Failure of, No Cycle, Setup, Suspect, Reject, Overload, and Note. Following is a brief description of each type of alarm, followed by Tables [Table B.1](#) through [Table B.7](#) which detail alarm messages, causes, and corrective actions for each type of alarm.

- A Cycle Modified alarm ([Table B.1 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) occurs when the most recent weld cycle has been modified by some event. For example, if the amplitude step did not occur as requested. The specific alarm that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display, and will advance the general alarm counter. If you encounter numerous or successive cycle modified alarms, review your weld parameter setup. See individual alarms for advancement of cycle counter
- Equipment Failure alarms, ([Table B.2 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) are those which might occur for hardware failure, or hardware disconnected. The specific equipment failure that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display. Repair or replace the equipment before you run another weld cycle. Alarms will advance the general alarm counter. For more detailed information on repairing your equipment contact Branson Product Support by calling the appropriate department as indicated in [1.4 How to Contact Branson](#).


| WARNING | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>You should always power down your system prior to repairing any portion of it.</p> |

- A No Cycle alarm ([Table B.3 No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) occurs when the most recent weld cycle was aborted before any weld took place. The specific no weld failure that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display. No Cycle alarms will advance the general alarm counter, but will not advance the cycle counter. You should continue with the next weld cycle; in most cases the part can be re-used
- A Suspect or Reject alarm ([Table B.4 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) occurs when the most recent weld cycle fell outside your programmed limits. The specific conflict that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display. Suspect/Reject alarms will advance the general alarm counter, but only once per cycle regardless of the number of alarms generated. You should inspect any part that was welded during a cycle that resulted in an alarm. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms you should review your weld parameter setup
- A Setup alarm ([Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) occurs when you have entered parameters that create a conflict with other parameters. For example, trying to step an amplitude at weld time 1.000 seconds, but the weld time is only

set for 0.500 seconds. The specific conflict that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display. All setup alarms must be resolved before a new cycle can be run. Setup alarms will advance the general alarm counter, but will not advance the cycle counter. If you are uncertain as to the cause of the conflict

- An Overload alarm ([Table B.6 Overload Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) occurs when your ultrasonic power supply has overloaded. Overload alarms advance the general alarms counter. The specific overload that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display
- Note alarms ([Table B.7 Note Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action](#)) occur to alert you that an alarm is imminent or the cycle ran with authorized modifications

8.7 Service Events

| WARNING | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Service events should be performed only by qualified individuals. The potential for injury or death exists, as well as that for damage to the equipment (which can include loss of product warranty) or loss of valuable setup information for your application.</p> <p>When servicing the system, the service person(s) can have a need for certain conventional hand tools, and you might need to have the following information for testing or returning the system to service.</p> |

8.7.1 Required Tools

Special tools for the ultrasonic Converter, such as spanner wrenches, are provided with your system. You might also need the following hand tools or service tools:

- Six-inch or longer Phillips-head screwdriver with a magnetic tip or screw starter
- Good-quality multi-meter for continuity, AC and DC voltages, and resistance, with insulated test probes

8.7.2 Voltage Test Points

Remove the cover and pivot the DC power supply. See [8.8.6 DC Power Supply](#).

Table 8.6 Voltage Test Points

| DC Power Supply |
|-------------------------|
| TB2-1 to TB2-4 = +12vdc |
| TB2-2 to TB2-4 = -12vdc |
| TB2-3 to TB2-4 = +24vdc |
| TB2-7 to TB2-6 = +5vdc |

8.7.3 Cold Start Procedures


The power supply internal memory stores the system default settings and the parameters that you set. A cold start clears the Weld Setup Menu values and restores them to original factory defaults. It is not necessary to perform a cold start during normal operation and servicing, but you might find a cold start helpful when:

- You suspect the system is not operating properly
- You want to make a new setup

Some system memory locations and parameters, such as internal power supply history and serial number information, will not be cleared by these Cold Start procedures.


8.7.3.1 Performing a Cold Start

Select Diagnostics from the Main Menu. Press the Cold Start button to initiate the Cold Start. The screen will return to Weld Setup when the Cold Start is complete.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Using the Cold Start procedures will erase the current preset and some of the Setup parameters in the System Configuration menu. Be sure you have a record of your setup if you want to retain it. Your settings can be saved to a preset. |

Refer to [6.15 Diagnostics](#) menu for additional information about Cold Start.

8.8 Parts Replacement

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>The 2000Xc Power Supply contains components that can be degraded or damaged by electrostatic discharge. Always use a Grounded Wriststrap and use a grounded work area when handling or servicing the 2000Xc Power Supply.</p> <p>In the following paragraphs, you are provided instructions on removing and replacing components. Before you begin to disassemble any parts of the power supply, ensure that the power supply is turned off, and the main power is disconnected. After the power supply cover is removed, wait at least five minutes to allow capacitors to discharge. When necessary, refer to Figure 8.3 and Figure 8.4 to help you with these procedures.</p> |

The 2000Xc Power Supply is designed for a long service life. In the event the system malfunctions, many of the internal components (Modules) are replaceable as a unit. If a particular module has failed, it should be replaced or repaired at a Branson Depot Facility.

The 2000Xc system is designed with an extensive Alarms Message system. Refer to the list of error messages to assist your troubleshooting. These error codes are described in [8.6 Troubleshooting](#).

The following parts are replaceable. Refer to the following views of the power supply to see the location of each of these components or modules.

8.8.1 Power Supply Cover

The cover is held in place with seven screws, three on each side of the case and one on the rear. Lift the rear of the cover up to remove it. The cover must be in place when the system is operating due to fan-forced ventilation design.

Figure 8.3 Component Location of 2000Xc Modules

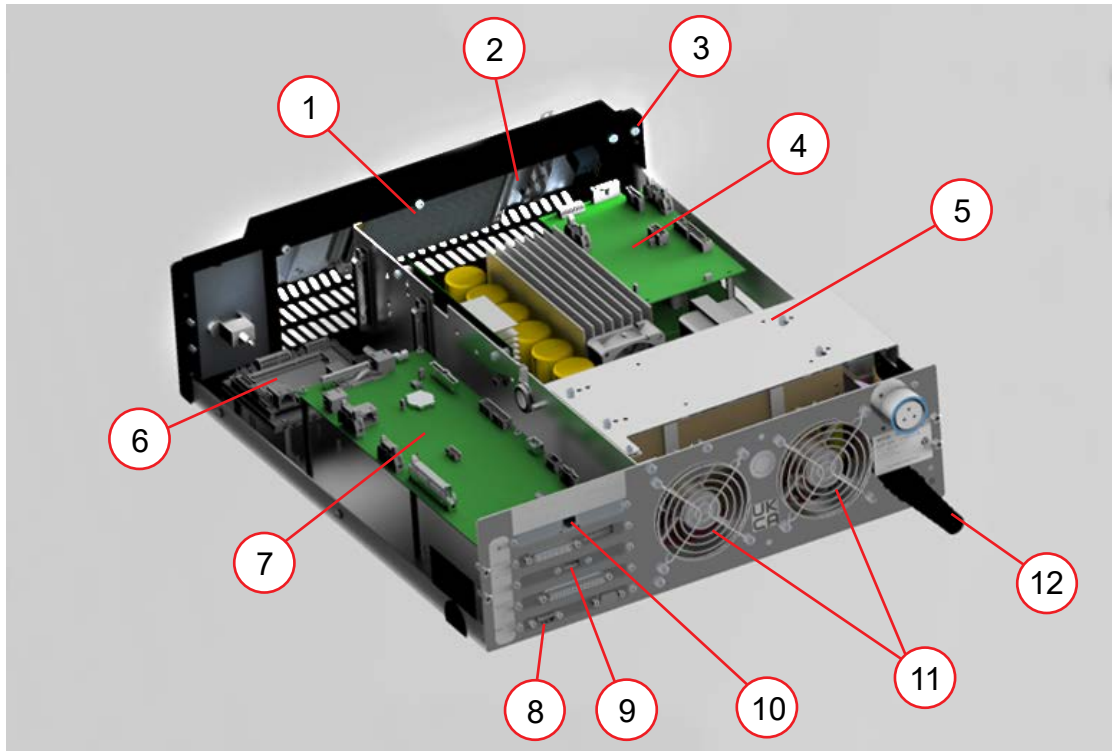
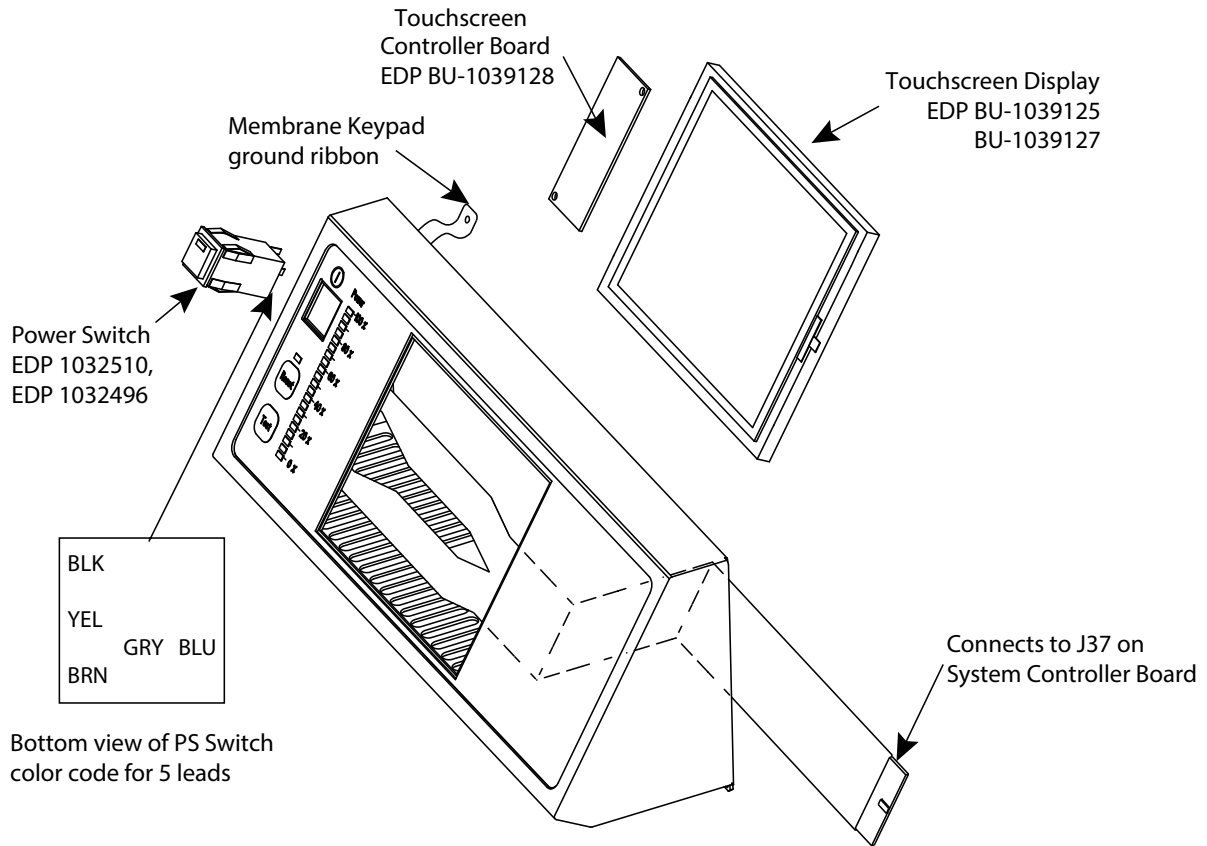


Table 8.7 2000Xc Modules

| Item | Name | Item | Name |
|------|--------------------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | Touchscreen display | 2 | Touchscreen Controller |
| 3 | Membrane Keypad ground ribbon attach point | 4 | Ultrasonic Power Supply Module |
| 5 | DC Power Supply Module | 6 | Single Computer Board |
| 7 | System Controller Board | 8 | External HDMI Connector |
| 9 | USB | 10 | RJ-45 Ethernet |
| 11 | Cooling Fans | 12 | Power Cord |

Figure 8.4 Front Panel, Exploded Parts View



8.8.2 Circuit Boards and Modules

Replaceable modules are shown in [Figure 8.3](#). Ribbon cables and connectors are unique and keyed to prevent the mis-connection of an appropriate connector in a location within the power supply case. Fans use identical wiring harnesses, with one tying back the extra lead length.

Make note of any wiring paths if you are removing a module, before you disassemble. In some cases, there are several possible paths, but one preferred location. Be especially careful with harnesses and wires that go between the two portions of the case, as they can be pinched by the metal case if mis-routed.

8.8.3 Power Switch and Lamp


The Power Switch with its integral lamp is a field-replaceable component. It uses a 5-conductor wiring harness. The switch leads are depicted, by color code, in [Figure 8.4](#), looking at the bottom of the switch. To replace the switch, disconnect power and push the switch out from the rear of the front bezel assembly. Disconnect the wires and, in reverse order, reinstall the new switch with the integral lamp toward the top side.

8.8.4 Front Panel Membrane and Touchscreen Display

To remove and replace the touchscreen display, take the following steps:


Table 8.8 Removing the Touchscreen Display

| Step | Action |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| <p>NOTICE Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.</p> | |
| 3 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc Power Supply cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 4 | Remove: 5 screws at front bottom of the power supply using a #0 Phillips screwdriver 3 screws securing the nose assembly from the front, inside, top of the chassis, using a #2 Phillips screwdriver 1 slotted screw and washer at the top right (from rear) that secures the ground ribbon from the Membrane Keypad |
| 5 | You will now have access to remove the: Touchscreen display Touchscreen Controller board, as required |
| 6 | Replace damaged touchscreen display and/or touchscreen controller board. |
| 7 | Reverse steps being careful not to pinch any wires. |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Be sure the touchscreen is installed in its original orientation. |

8.8.5 Power Supply Module

The ultrasonic power supply module is affixed to the bottom of the power supply box with four screws through the bottom board. To remove the power supply module, perform the following steps listed in [Table 8.9](#).

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Transfer the DIP switch settings from the original module to the new module.</p> <p>If installing a 1.1kw or 800w power supply module into a 117 VAC power supply, move the 115/230 jumper to the 115 position.</p> |

To remove the power supply module, take the following steps:

Table 8.9 Removing the Power Supply Module

| Step | Action |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| <p>NOTICE Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge.</p> | |
| 3 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 4 | Disconnect P13, P51, and P60 from controller board. |
| 5 | Disconnect P21 and P24 from the lower board. |
| 6 | Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove retaining screws. |
| 7 | Slide the module out of the power supply |

To reinstall the power supply module, reverse the removal procedure.

8.8.6 DC Power Supply


The DC power supply is mounted to the rear of the power supply case. It is mounted so it will swivel up to service the DC power supply, line board, and fuses. See [Figure 8.3](#).

To remove the DC power supply, take the following steps:


Table 8.10 Removing the DC Power Supply

| Step | Action |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| NOTICE Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge. | |
| 3 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 4 | Using a #1 Phillips screwdriver, on the top of the DC power supply, remove 1 rear screw. (See Figure 8.3) |
| 5 | Using a #1 Phillips screwdriver, on the left side of the DC power supply, remove the rear screw. (See Figure 8.3) |
| 6 | Rotate the DC power supply up to allow you access to connectors. |
| 7 | Disconnect the 5-pin connector (J1). |
| 8 | Disconnect the 16-pin connector (J3). |
| 9 | Disconnect pin 3 (red) and pin 4 (black) from TB2 noting the wire colors. |
| 10 | On the top of the DC power supply, remove 4 screws. (Note the location of the EMI shield.) |
| 11 | Remove the DC power supply. |

To reinstall the DC power supply, reverse the removal procedure.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When reconnecting wires, observe the color coding that you previously noted. When installing the connectors, to J1 and J3, ensure the wires from the connectors are turned toward the outside of the unit.</p> |

8.8.7 Battery for the Real Time Clock RAM


| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | When the battery is worn out, dispose it under the ordinance of each local government. |

To remove and replace the battery, take the following steps:

Table 8.11 Battery for the Real Time Clock RAM

| Step | Action |
|------|----------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |

| NOTICE | |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge. | |
| 3 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc power supply cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 4 | Remove and replace the battery, located on the controller board. |
| 5 | Replace cover and screws. Plug in main power and turn on the power supply. |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | After replacing battery, re-enter Date, Time, and current preset. |

8.8.8 System Controller Board

To remove the System Controller Board, see EDP 932-063-1086 2000Xc Power Supply System Controller Board Installation Guide.

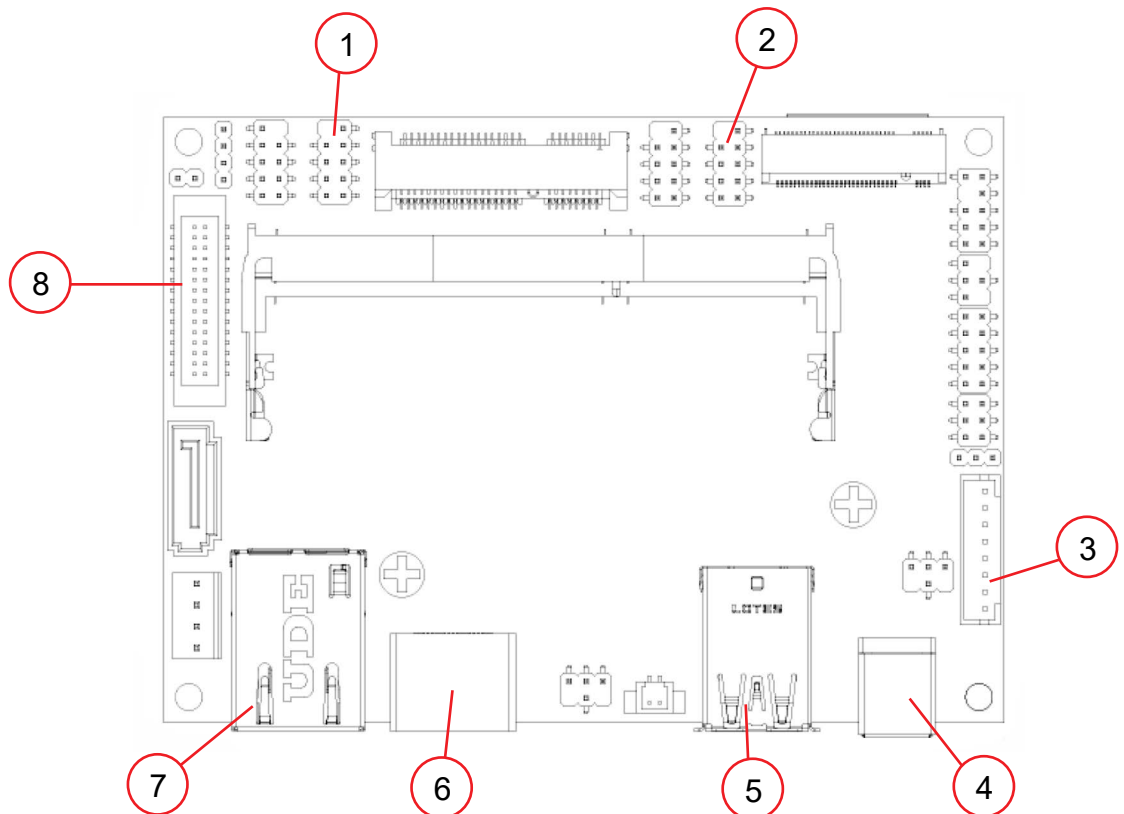
8.8.9 Single Board Computer (SBC)

To remove the SBC, take the following steps:

Table 8.12 Removing the SBC PC Board

| Step | Action |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| NOTICE Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge. | |
| 3 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 4 | Disconnect all cables from SBC. |
| 5 | Using a #1 Phillips screwdriver, remove the 4 screws that hold the SBC. |
| 6 | Remove the SBC. |


Figure 8.5 SBC PC Board Connector Layout



To reinstall the SBC PC board, reverse the removal procedure.

Table 8.13 Reinstalling the SBC Board

| Item | Connect item as shown below |
|------|----------------------------------------|
| 1 | USB3 to front and rear USB Ports. |
| 2 | COM1 to J42 on Weld Controller PCB. |
| 3 | Inverter to J501 on Touchscreen. |
| 4 | DCIN to Power. |
| 5 | USB1 to JP1 on Touchscreen Controller. |
| 6 | HDMI to rear HDMI Port. |
| 7 | LAN1 to J21 on Weld Controller PCB. |
| 8 | LVDS to J001 on Touchscreen. |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>When the battery is worn out, dispose it under the ordinance of each local government.</p> |

8.8.10 Line Board


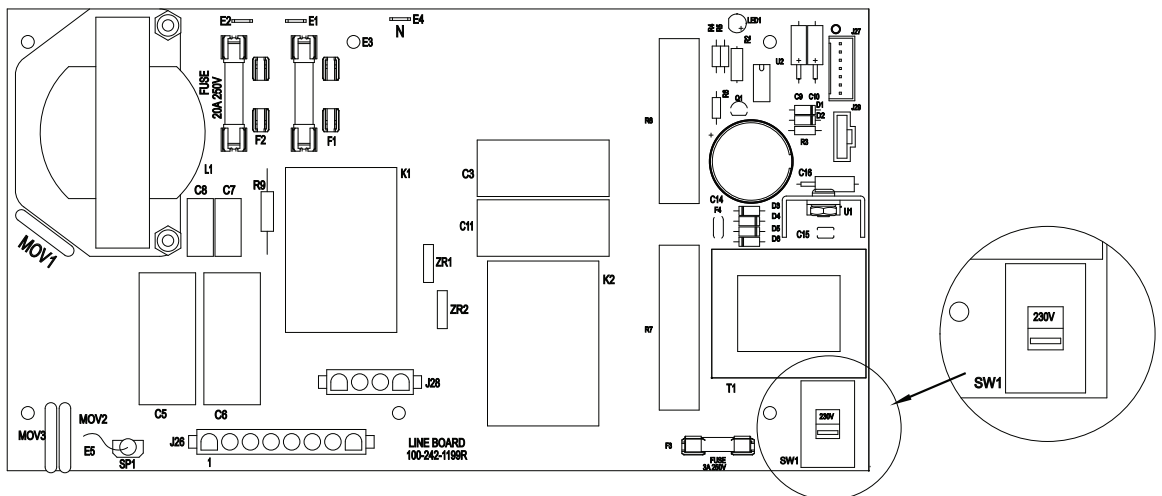
| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Refer to Figure 8.6 below to verify the voltage selector switch is configured properly for your intended operating voltage.</p> |

Figure 8.6 Lineboard EDP 100-242-1199R*




*100-242-1293R for 4 KW units and 15 kHz 3.3 KW & 100-242-1265R for 30 kHz 1.5 KW 120VAC only.

To remove the Line Board, take the following steps:

Table 8.14 Removing the Line Board

| Step | Action |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| 3 | Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge. |
| 4 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc Power Supply cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 5 | Rotate the DC power supply up to allow you access to the Line Board. See 8.8.6 DC Power Supply . |
| 6 | Disconnect J26, J27, J28, and J29. |
| 7 | For 120 V systems, disconnect line labeled E1 and neutral labeled E4 or N. For 220 V systems, disconnect lines labeled E1 and E2. Note that the brown lead is the hot lead. |
| 8 | Remove 5 M3 screws (Phillips) and 1 ground screw (common head). |
| 9 | Lift out the line board. |

To reinstall the Line Board, reverse the removal procedures.

| CAUTION | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | When reconnecting wires, observe the color coding that you previously noted and the connections noted in step 6 above. |

8.8.11 Line Fuses

To remove and replace the line fuses, take the following steps:

Table 8.15 Removing and Replacing the Line Fuses

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| 3 | Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge. |
| 4 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 5 | Rotate the DC power supply up to allow you access to the Line Board. See 8.8.6 DC Power Supply . |
| 6 | Remove and replace the line fuse(s) located on the Line Board. |

Reassemble the power supply by reversing the above procedure.


8.8.12 Cooling Fans

To remove a cooling fan, take the following steps:

Table 8.16 Removing a Cooling Fan

| Step | Action |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn off the power supply. |
| 2 | Unplug the main power. |
| 3 | Allow at least 5 minutes for capacitor discharge. |
| 4 | Using a #2 Phillips screwdriver, remove 7 screws from the 2000Xc cover (3 on each side, 1 on the rear). Remove the cover. |
| 5 | Rotate the DC power supply up to allow you access to the fans. See 8.8.6 DC Power Supply . |
| 6 | Cut the tie-wraps from the fan wiring. |
| 7 | Disconnect the electrical connector(s). |
| 8 | Remove the 4 fan mounting screws and nuts. |
| 9 | Remove the fan and shield. |

To reinstall the a cooling fan, reverse the removal procedure while observing the direction of air flow.

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Be sure that you reinstall the fan shields on the back of the power supply. |

Appendix A: FAQ

A.1 FAQ: 2000Xc Series230

A.1 FAQ: 2000Xc Series

Q. What is the User ID and Password:?

A. The 2000Xc system is shipped with a default user name: ADMIN and default password: 123456Aa#. The password will need to be changed after the first log in. It is highly recommended to create multiple Executive users for backup.

Q. I've lost my user name or password. How can I get in?

A. The Executive is the only authority that can recover user names and password. If the Executive lost his password or user name, the Password Recovery Kit will need to be used to turn off the Authority Check. The Password Recovery Kit is a dongle that plugs into the back of the 2000Xc power supply. It can be ordered from Branson. EDP number is 101-063-1089. See [6.24.2 Password Recovery](#) for more information.

Q. My user name has been disabled. How do I reactive it?

A. The Executive can disable and re-enable users.

Q. Can Branson give us a temporary or global user name and password for logging in?

A. No, there is no backdoor password to enter the system. If all the user and passwords are lost, the Password Recovery Kit will need to be used.

Q. I've logged in as a Supervisor and/or Executive but none of the features in the configuration screen are accessible.

A. Verify that the system is not in Automation mode. If Automation is set to on, accessibility to configuration options is limited.

Q. What are the electrical characteristics of the input/output lines in the START and USER I/O cables?

A. They are rated at 10ma. 24Vdc. This is compatible with most PLC's available.

Q. Can't I use 120 volt AC LOGIC?

A. Not directly. Use relays to interface between the 2 logic levels. Note: use relays with low-power requirement coils, and use back biased diodes to suppress induced back EMF.

Q. But you forgot about the RELAY outputs in your diagrams.

A. They are SOLID STATE relays, and can safely withstand 40 V ac 250 ma, or 24 V dc, 250 ma. So they may be suited better to drive relays, if required to interface to relay coils.

Q. Why do you have so many pins in the USER I/O cable?

A. We combined the alarm and advanced feature connector outputs from the 900 Series with 2000 Series additions to provide maximum features and flexibility while retaining most feature backward compatibility.

Q. What do I do with the UNUSED PINS?

A. You should electrically isolate each unused pin so that shorts to ground and other outputs are avoided. This could possibly damage the controller board and other system components.

Q. Do I ground the shields on the USER I/O cable?

A. No; leave the shield from the cable isolated and cut-back so they do not touch ground: this prevents ground loop interference from occurring.

Q. Should I ground the RETURN lines in the USER I/O cable?

A. If required: this generally is not a problem. If problems occur, see "OTHER THAN 24 VOLTS".

Q. What are those SQUARE PLASTIC HOUSINGS on the cables?

A. They are ferrites that are used to reduce crosstalk and interference from entering the system. DO NOT remove them.

Q. How LONG can I run the CABLES?

A. Cable sets are available in 8, 15, 25, and on special order 50-foot lengths. Contact Branson Product Support or Customer Service if you have special needs.

Q. Can I run the Branson welder cables in a WIRING TROUGH with other system cables?

A. Generally yes. But it would be best to avoid other noise trouble source cables or wiring.

Q. What other system cables might cause a NOISE TROUBLE SOURCE?

A. Avoid wiring of devices such as solenoids, large relays, motors, or anything that has the potential of large inductive currents. Digital devices may also create broad-spectrum noise. Generally, all automation controls can be noise generators.

Q. Why do you require the READY signal to be monitored by the system PLC?

A. The welder mandatory requirements dictate the unit be READY or else the unit will DISREGARD any start command.

Q. Why must I MAINTAIN THE START SIGNAL?

A. This is the way the built-in safety circuits operate. Also, the vast library of error-detection firmware code is based on these same requirements. Watch for the PB RELEASE signal, then you can release the START SIGNAL

Q. What can I do to make sure I run at MAXIMUM CYCLE RATE for my machine?

A. You can:

- RESET immediately after an GENERAL ALARM output
- RELEASE the DUAL START inputs immediately after an GENERAL ALARM output
- RELEASE the DUAL START inputs immediately after sensing PB RELEASE output
- Never run in an open-loop mode, if possible. Fixed timing can be too short should a fault occur, or may be longer in time than is necessary

Q. Do all models run at the same CYCLE RATE?

A. See above.

Q. Are there any special requirements for operation with the ACTUATOR UP-SIDE DOWN?

A. Always let Branson know when you plan to run in this manner. Model-specific advice will be provided.

Q. Are there any special requirements for operation with the ACTUATOR HORIZONTAL?

A. Always let Branson know when you plan to run in this manner. Model-specific advice will be provided.

Q. Horn Down and Horn Scan are not working.

A. Horn Down and Horn Scan only operate when the welder is in ready mode. If the Part-ID Scan in the system configuration is on, the system will not be ready until part is scanned. The Part-ID Scan will need to be set to off or a part scan will need to be made to use Horn Down and Horn Scan.

Q. How does EMERGENCY STOP work?

A. Keep in mind that it is meant for EMERGENCY usage only, not for normal head retraction functions. Additional time is allotted for checking the welders' hardware and system status after an EMERGENCY STOP. Note: A front panel or external signal Reset is required after an Emergency Stop to re initialize the welder. Also see CYCLE ABORT below.

Q. So the CYCLE ABORT function is the preferred fast welder head retraction function?

A. Yes. It does not require the additional time that is allotted for checking the welders' hardware and system status that is used for EMERGENCY STOP.

Q. How does RESET work? Can I hold it on?

A. RESET is only acted upon after a GENERAL ALARM. Do not hold it in the RESET state as it will be ignored.

Q. My system logic uses some value OTHER THAN 24 VOLTS. What do I do?

A. A set of dipswitches are provided on the rear panel slot that contains the USER I/O connector. Setting the switches to OFF (open) converts the 24volt USER I/O to OPEN COLLECTOR configuration. The same voltage/current spec.'s apply when in this mode. (24 volt dc,25ma max.) Use them to control devices that have outputs compatible to your requirements.

Q. Are there any environmental conditions to be concerned about?

A. Any electrical/electronic equipment does not work well in: high humidity (condensing) conditions: also in dusty areas, in particular conductive dust (carbon granule or fiber, charcoal, metal particle, etc.)

A Fan Filter Kit with instructions can be factory or customer installed for just ordinary dusty areas.

Always contact your area representative, Branson Product Support or Customer Service should any like conditions or for inquires about explosion-proof requirements.

Appendix B: Alarms

B.1 System Alarm Tables234

B.1 System Alarm Tables

The following tables detail alarms that you can encounter on the 2000Xc Power Supply, listed in numeric order for each group that is presented on the front panel. The message on the display panel of the Power Supply is shown in the first column. A more detailed message is shown in the second column. The third and fourth columns indicate the condition that led to the alarm and the corrective action you should take.

B.1.1 Alarm Index

An alphabetical list of the alarms that appear on the system display is included in [B.1.1 Alarm Index](#).

Figure B.1 Alarm Log

| ALARM LOG | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| Alarm# | Date | Time | Alarm ID | Cycle # |
| 45725 | 03/26/15 | 12:34:14 | 609 | 0 |
| 45724 | 03/26/15 | 12:33:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45723 | 03/26/15 | 12:32:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45722 | 03/26/15 | 12:31:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45721 | 03/26/15 | 12:30:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45720 | 03/26/15 | 12:29:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45719 | 03/26/15 | 12:28:14 | 633 | 0 |
| 45718 | 03/26/15 | 12:27:14 | 633 | 0 |

<
^
^
v
v
>
Exit

Weld Results
Main Menu
Weld Setup
Graphs

B.1.2 Cycle Modified Alarms

Table B.1 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 301 | Trigger Lost in Hold | The cycle was aborted because trigger force on the part was lost. | Verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply. |
| 301 | Trigger Lost in Weld | The cycle was aborted because trigger force on the part was lost. | Verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply. Verify stroke length < 3.75". |
| 303 | Ground Detect Abort | The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred during weld or hold. | Verify part placement and distance parameters. |
| 304 | Max Timeout | The ultrasonics ran for the maximum allowed time because the set parameter could not be achieved. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm. |
| 305 | No Amplitude Step | The amplitude time step trigger was not reached. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter. |
| 307 | No Amplitude Step | The amplitude energy step trigger was not reached. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter. |
| 309 | No Amplitude Step | The amplitude collapse distance step trigger was not reached. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter. |

Table B.1 Cycle Modified Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 314 | Energy Not Reached | The weld time has been extended up to 50% and the minimum energy has still not been reached. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your minimum energy setting. |
| 315 | Trigger > End Force | The force at the end of the weld is less than the trigger force you set. | Increase your downspeed and/or system pressure. If you very frequently receive this alarm, contact Branson |
| 421 | Sonics Disabled | | Remove Sonics Disable input. |
| 2EE | Input PIN Conflict | | |
| 30C | No Amplitude Step | The amplitude power step level was not reached. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, turn amplitude stepping off. If the part is not acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter. |
| 30D | No Amplitude Step | The amplitude step at external signal input was not received. | Make sure Ext Signal is defined in the User I/O. |
| 41B | Peak Power Cutoff | The peak power cutoff was reached. The main parameter you set for the weld cycle was not used. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm. |
| 41C | ABS Cutoff | The absolute distance cutoff you set was reached. The main parameter you set for the weld cycle was not used to the end of the cycle. | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm. |
| 70F | Ground Detect Abort | The cycle was aborted because ground detect occurred during Weld or Hold | Manually inspect the part. If the part is acceptable, you might want to adjust your main parameter to avoid this alarm. |

B.1.3 Failure of Alarms

Table B.2 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 601 | Start Switch Closed | Start switches are still active after the carriage is at ULS for 6 seconds. | Deactivate start switches. |
| 604 | Upper Limit Switch | Upper Limit Switch was not engaged at the end of weld cycle. The switch might have failed or the electrical wiring might be loose. | Verify the electrical connections for the Upper Limit Switch or replace the switch. |
| 609 | Start Switches Lost | Checked after both start switches, and before trigger. There is a 10 ms debounce time before considered lost. | Press start switches again. |
| 620 | Pretrigger Timeout | Pretrigger has not occurred within 10 seconds of carriage leaving home (of upper limit becoming inactive). | Check the distance setting for pretrigger to be sure the carriage is traveling at least that far. Repair/replace Control Board. |
| 623 | Thermal Overload | Thermal sensors on the Power Supply indicate that the temperature is above the maximum operating temperature. | Lower the duty cycle by decreasing the on time or increasing the off time. Ensure fans are operational and internal components are free of dust. |
| 624 | Preset Data/BBR | Corrupted data in preset. Checked at power up. | Repair/replace the Control Board. Replace battery. |
| 625 | Horn Return Timeout | The Horn did not retract to the home position after the weld was completed and within the correct time. The Horn might be jammed or air pressure might have failed. The Upper Limit Switch might also have failed. | Verify that air pressure is correct. Check for obstructions or jams that would prevent the Horn from returning. Verify the operation of the Upper Limit Switch. |

Table B.2 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 626 | Actuator NovRam Error Code = 10 | The Actuator NovRam has corrupted data | Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator. |
| 626 | Actuator NovRam Error Code = 20 | Cylinder size is not 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 50mm, 63mm, 80mm, or Custom. | Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator. |
| 626 | Actuator NovRam Error Code = 30 | Stroke length is not 4", 5", 6", 7", 8", 80mm, 160mm, or Custom. | Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator. |
| 626 | Actuator NovRam Error Code = 40 | When each successive element in the Pressure Sensor Calibration Table is not greater than the preceding one. | Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator. |
| 626 | Actuator NovRam Error Code = 50 | When each successive element in the Load Cell Table is not larger than the preceding one. | Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator. |
| 626 | Actuator NovRam Error Code = 60 | Could not write to the actuator NovRam. | Perform a Cold Start. Check setup/cable. Repair/replace Interface board in actuator. |
| 627 | P/S NovRam | The power supply NovRam failed. It is checked only at power up. | Repair/replace Control Board. |
| 628 | Start Sw Time | You did not activate both start switches within the required time interval. | Activate both start switches at the same time to rerun the cycle. |
| 629 | USB Memory Full | Data was selected to be saved on the USB memory stick, but the memory stick is now full. | Welding will be stopped until corrected. If all data from the weld will not fit, then no data will be written. All data from any given weld cycle must be written on one USB stick. |
| 630 | Actuator Clear Function | The carriage is home before the actuator clear condition was met. | Make sure the linear encoder cable is connected properly. Replace Linear Encoder. Repair/replace Control Board. |

Table B.2 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 632 | Actuator Type | Actuator type detected at power up is different from the actuator type that was used on the last weld cycle. Checked at power up and after E-Stop is removed. | Verify serial number (excepting ae/ao) and type, then reset. If you did not change the actuator, troubleshoot your system. |
| 635 | USB Memory Lost | The USB memory stick has been removed or it is not functional. | Since weld data was configured to be saved on the USB stick, welding must be stopped until either the USB stick is functional or weld data is no longer required to be saved. |
| 62A | Wrong Actuator | The power supply has detected an actuator that cannot be used with a power supply of this type. | Use the correct actuator for this power supply. |
| 62B | Ultrasonics P/S | Checked during power up. Seek was requested but no run signal detected, or the amplitude from the Power output is less than 2%. A DUPS communication error occurred. | Contact Branson. Repair/replace the power supply Module. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 100 | Either the actuator serial number is different from the last time power was turned on, or your new setup requires a calibration. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 200 | A collapse of more than 0.2500" and less than 35 lbs. of force was reached. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. Also check part alignment. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 300 | A change in horn weight of 6-7 lbs since the last power down or E-stop. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |

Table B.2 Failure of Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 400 | Carriage travel greater than -0.25 after trigger. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 600 | Actuator type has changed. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 700 | In Horn Down, a bad Trigger has occurred. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 800 | Part contact flag has been lost. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |
| 62F | Recalibrate Actuator Error Code = 900 | Carriage travels greater than 0.250 and less than 35 lbs. force was developed after part contact and before trigger. | Run an Actuator Calibration procedure from the Alarm Information screen or from Calibrate in the Main Menu. |

B.1.4 No Cycle Alarms

Table B.3 No Cycle Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 702 | Trigger Timeout | Trigger force was not achieved within the 10 second allowed time. | Verify that the part is in the fixture; verify that there is adequate pressure from your pneumatic supply. Verify stroke length <3.75" |
| 703 | Trg Delay Timeout | Ext trigger delay has been turned on, but the assigned input did not go inactive within the 30 seconds allowed. | Check external timing. Activate Ext Trg Delay. |
| 706 | Missing Part Abort | Checked during downstroke. The missing part minimum distance has not been reached before trigger occurred or the maximum distance has been exceeded before trigger occurred. | Insert a part into the fixture. Use the horn down feature to determine the distance to the part, and reset the minimum and maximum settings as necessary through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 708 | Trig Before Pretrig | Trigger has occurred before pre-trigger distance, upper limit switch is inactive, or pre-trigger time delay has not timed out. | Check each condition and correct where necessary. |
| 70C | Abs Before Trg | The absolute distance has been reached before trigger. This alarm in other modes means the absolute cutoff distance has been reached before trigger. | Reset your absolute distance parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu. |
| 70D | Amp Step Before Trg | The amplitude step trigger has been detected within 2 ms of start of weld time. | Reset your amplitude step parameter through the Alarm Information screen or the Setup menu. |
| 70F | Ground Detect | The ground detect input is either improperly configured, in the wrong condition or failed. | Reconfigure properly, change condition or replace faulty input. |

B.1.5 Suspect or Reject Alarms

Table B.4 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 500 | - R Trg Dist Limit | The actual trigger distance value did not reach the minus reject trigger distance limit. | Adjust - reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms. |
| 503 | +R Pk Power Limit | The actual peak power value exceeded the plus reject peak power limit. | Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Peak Power settings. |
| 504 | - R Pk Power Limit | The peak power used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject peak power limits. |
| 505 | - R Time Limit | The actual time value did not reach the minus reject time limit. | Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Time settings. |
| 506 | +R Time Limit | The actual time value exceeded the plus reject time limit. | Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Time settings or your reject time limits. |
| 507 | - R Energy Limit | The energy used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject energy limits. |
| 508 | +R Energy Limit | The energy used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject energy limits. |

Table B.4 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 509 | - R Col Dist Limit | The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject collapse distance limits. |
| 510 | +R Weld Force Limit | The actual Weld Force exceeded the plus Reject Weld Force limit. | Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Weld Force settings. |
| 512 | -R Freq Limit | The system Bandwidth Limit (SBL) function has determined the frequency has dropped too much and is now close to the series resonant point. | Verify integrity of stack. Review application. |
| 513 | +R Freq Limit | The system Bandwidth Limit (SBL) function has determined the frequency has risen too much and is now close to the series resonant point. | Verify integrity of stack. Review application. |
| 514 | +R PMC Band Limit | The Power Match Curve function has detected points above the acceptable curve. | Run additional cycles to determine if this is a trend or an anomaly. Examine process and adjust accordingly. |
| 515 | -R PMC Band Limit | The Power Match Curve function has detected points below the acceptable curve. | Run additional cycles to determine if this is a trend or an anomaly. Examine process and adjust accordingly. |
| 551 | - S Energy Limit | The energy used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect energy limits. |

Table B.4 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 552 | +S Energy Limit | The energy used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect energy limits. |
| 553 | - S Pk Power Limit | The peak power used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect peak power limits. |
| 554 | +S Pk Power Limit | The peak power used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect peak power limits. |
| 555 | - S Col Dist Limit | The actual collapse distance value did not reach the minus suspect collapse distance limit. | Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the collapse distance value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 556 | + S Col Dist Limit | The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect collapse distance limits. |
| 557 | - S Abs Dist Limit | The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect absolute distance limits. |

Table B.4 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 558 | +S Abs Dist Limit | The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect absolute distance limits. |
| 559 | - S Trg Dist Limit | The actual trigger distance value did not reach the minus suspect trigger distance limit. | Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Trigger Distance Limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 50A | + R Col Dist Limit | The collapse distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper reject limit you set. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject collapse distance limits. |
| 50B | - R Abs Dist Limit | The absolute distance used in the most recent weld was less than the lower reject limit you set. | Discard the part. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your reject absolute distance limit. |
| 50C | +R Abs Dist Limit | The actual distance value exceeded the plus reject absolute distance limit. | Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts. Consider changing your Absolute settings. |
| 50E | +R Trg Dist Limit | The actual trigger distance value exceeded the plus reject trigger distance limit. | Adjust + reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms. |
| 50F | - R Weld Force Limit | The actual Weld Force did not reach the minus reject Weld Force limit. | Adjust - reject weld force through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. Discard the part if you encounter numerous or successive alarms. |

Table B.4 Suspect/Reject Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 55A | + S Trg Dist Limit | The trigger distance used in the most recent weld was greater than the upper suspect limit you set. | Manually inspect the part for a good weld. If you encounter numerous or successive alarms with good parts, you might change your suspect trigger distance limits. |
| 55B | - S Weld Force Limit | The actual Weld Force did not reach the minus suspect Weld Force limit. | Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Weld Force value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 55C | +S Weld Force Limit | The actual Weld Force exceeded the plus suspect Weld Force limit. | Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Weld Force value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 55D | - S Time Limit | The time used in the most recent weld was less than the lower suspect limit you set. | Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Time value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 55E | +S Time Limit | The actual time value exceeded the plus suspect time limit. | Inspect your parts. For numerous or successive alarms, you might adjust the Time value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu or change suspect time limits. |

B.1.6 Setup Alarms

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 1 | | Currently, MPS is not available. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 2 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 3 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 4 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 5 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 6 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 7 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 8 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 203 | Invalid Preset Error Code = 9 | | Change the settings in your preset. A cold start may be needed. |
| 207 | + - Time Limit Crossed | The suspect limits for time that you have entered are reversed. | Change the suspect time limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 208 | + - Time Limit Crossed | The reject limits for time that you have entered are reversed. | Change the reject time limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 209 | + - Eng Limit Crossed | The suspect limits for energy that you have entered are reversed. | Change the suspect energy limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 210 | + - Abs Limit Crossed | The suspect limits for absolute distance that you have entered are reversed. | Change the suspect absolute distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 211 | + - Col Limit Crossed | The reject limits for collapse distance that you have entered are reversed. | Change the reject collapse distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 212 | + - Col Limit Crossed | The suspect limits for collapse distance that you have entered are reversed. | Change the suspect collapse distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 213 | + - F Limit Crossed | The minus reject weld force limit is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit. | Change the - reject weld force limit and/or the +reject weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 214 | + - F Limit Crossed | The minus suspect force limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect force limit. | Change the - suspect weld force limit and/or the +suspect weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 215 | Amp Step Conflict | The time that you have set for the amplitude to step is greater than the time that you have set for the weld cycle. | Change the step time for the amplitude and/or the time setting for the weld cycle. |
| 216 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus reject peak power limit value. | Change the amplitude step or +reject peak power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 217 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect peak power limit. | Change the amplitude step or +suspect peak power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 218 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus reject energy limit. | Change the amplitude step or +reject energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 219 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the plus suspect energy limit. | Change the amplitude step or +suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 226 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step at power value is equal to or greater than the peak power value. This alarm is for peak power mode only. | Change the amplitude step or peak power main parameter through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 227 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step at energy value is equal to or greater than the max energy compensation value. | Change the amplitude step or maximum energy compensation limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 229 | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step value is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. This alarm is in all modes but peak power. | Change the amplitude step or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 231 | Amp Step Conflict | The energy level you have set for the amplitude to step is in conflict with the energy level you have set for the weld cycle. | Change the step energy for the amplitude and/or the energy level for the weld cycle. |
| 232 | Timeout Conflict | The plus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. | Change the +reject time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 233 | Timeout Conflict | The minus suspect time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. | Change the +suspect time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 234 | Timeout Conflict | The minus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. | Change the - reject time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 237 | - S Trg > - S Abs | The minus suspect trigger limit value is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute distance limit. | Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 238 | +S Trg > +S Abs | The plus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Change the +suspect trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 239 | - R Trg > - R Abs | The minus reject trigger limit is equal to or greater than the minus reject absolute limit. | Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the - reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 244 | Time S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject time limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect time limit. | Change the +reject time limit or - suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 245 | Time S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect time is equal to or less than the minus reject time limit. | Change the +suspect time limit or - reject time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 246 | Time S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject time limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect time limit. | Change the +reject time limit or +suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 247 | Time S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject time limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect time limit. | Change the - reject time limit or - suspect time limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 248 | Eng S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect energy limit. | Change the +reject energy limit or - suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 249 | Eng S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minus reject energy limit. | Change the +suspect energy limit or - reject energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 250 | Abs S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject absolute distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect absolute distance limit. | Change the +reject absolute distance or - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 251 | Abs S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect absolute distance limit is equal to or less than the minus reject absolute distance limit. | Change the +suspect absolute distance or - reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 252 | Abs S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject absolute distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect absolute distance limit. | Change the +reject absolute distance or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 253 | Abs S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject absolute distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute distance limit. | Change the - reject absolute distance limit or the - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 254 | Col S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject collapse distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect collapse distance limit. | Change the +reject collapse distance limit or - suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 255 | Col S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect collapse distance limit is equal to or less than the minus reject collapse distance limit. | Change the +suspect collapse distance limit or - reject collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 256 | Col S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject collapse distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect collapse distance limit. | Change the +reject collapse distance limit or +suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 257 | Col S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject collapse distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect collapse distance limit. | Change the - reject collapse distance limit or - suspect collapse distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 258 | F S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject force limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect force limit. | Change the +reject force limit and/or the - suspect force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 259 | F S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect force limit is equal to or less than the minus reject force limit. | Change the +suspect force limit and/or the - reject force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 260 | Trg S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger distance limit. | Change the +reject trigger limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 261 | Trg S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect trigger distance limit is equal or less than the minus reject trigger distance limit. | Change the +suspect trigger limit or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 262 | Trg S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger distance limit. | Change the +reject trigger limit or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 263 | Trg S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject trigger distance limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger distance limit. | Change the - reject trigger limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 269 | Energy Comp Crossed | The energy minimum and maximum settings are crossed. This alarm is only valid when energy compensation is on. | Change the minimum and maximum energy compensation limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 270 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 271 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject trigger limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or +reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 272 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect trigger limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or +suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 273 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject trigger limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 274 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 275 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the absolute cutoff distance | Change the pretrigger distance or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 276 | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance. | Change the pretrigger distance or absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 277 | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus reject absolute limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or - reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 278 | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus reject trigger limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or - reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 279 | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect absolute limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 280 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus reject trigger limit. | Change the missing part minimum limit or - reject trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 282 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute limit. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or - suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 283 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger limit. | Change the missing part maximum distance limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 284 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger limit. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or - suspect trigger limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 285 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit. | Change the missing part maximum distance limit or +reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 286 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 287 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the plus reject trigger limit. | Change the missing part maximum distance or +reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm information screen or Setup menu. |
| 288 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or less than the plus reject trigger limit. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 289 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Change the missing part maximum distance limit or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 290 | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance setting. This alarm occurs in absolute mode only. | Change the missing part maximum distance limit or absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 291 | Energy Comp Conflict | The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only. | Change the +Reject energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 292 | Energy Comp Conflict | The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only. | Change the +Suspect energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 298 | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject absolute limit. | Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 633 | Sys. Pres. Incorrect | The system pressure is out of tolerance (+/-3 PSI). The pressure is read only after five seconds of idle time while in ready. This alarm does not remove the ready signal because that would prevent entry into horn down. Horn down is the only place where the pressure can be viewed. | |
| 20A | + - Eng Limit Crossed | The reject limits for energy that you have entered are reversed. | Change the reject energy limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 20B | + - Pwr Limit Crossed | The suspect limits for power that you have entered are reversed. | Change the suspect power limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 20C | + - Pwr Limit Crossed | The reject limits for power that you have entered are reversed. | Change the reject power limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 20E | + - Rej Limit Crossed | The + reject freq limit and - reject freq limit values are crossed. | Either make the correction or run a horn scan to automatically correct. This alarm is valid for VGA only. |
| 20F | + - Abs Limit Crossed | The reject limits for absolute distance that you have entered are reversed. | Change the reject absolute distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 22A | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step at collapse value is equal to or greater than collapse cutoff. | Change the amplitude step or collapse cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 22B | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step at collapse distance is equal to or greater than the collapse distance. | Change the amplitude step or collapse distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 22C | Amp Step Conflict | The amplitude step at time value is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. This occurs in all modes except time. | Change the amplitude step at time value and/or the maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 22D | + - Trg Limit Crossed | The reject limits for trigger distance that you have entered are reversed. | Change the reject trigger distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 22E | + - Trg Limit Crossed | The suspect limits for trigger distance that you have entered are reversed. | Change the suspect trigger distance limits through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 22F | Preset Not Available | Preset is recalled via external inputs and the preset is not defined or is not allowed for the control level. | Check control level availability for preset. Preset is not defined. Make sure presets do not exceed 16. |
| 23A | +R Trg > +R Abs | The plus reject trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute distance limit. | Change the +reject trigger limit and/or the +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 23B | Timeout Conflict | The plus suspect time limit is equal to or greater than the maximum timeout value. | Change the +suspect time limit or maximum timeout value through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 23C | Cutoff Conflict | The minus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. | Change the - reject power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 23D | Cutoff Conflict | The plus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. | Change the +reject power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 23E | Cutoff Conflict | The minus suspect power limit is equal to or greater than the peak power cutoff value. | Change the - suspect power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 23F | Cutoff Conflict | The plus suspect power limit is equal to or less than the peak power cutoff value. | Change the +suspect power limit or peak power cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 24A | Eng S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect energy limit. | Change the +reject energy limit or +suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 24B | Eng S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject energy limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect energy limit. | Change the - reject energy limit or - suspect energy limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 24C | Pwr S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject power limit is equal to or less than the minus suspect power limit. | Change the +reject power limit or - suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 24D | Pwr S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject power limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect power limit. | Change the +reject power limit or +suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 24E | Pwr S/R Limit Cross | The plus suspect power limit is equal to or less than the minus reject power limit. | Change the +suspect power limit or - reject power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 24F | Pwr S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject power limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect power limit. | Change the - reject power limit or - suspect power limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 25A | F S/R Limit Cross | The plus reject force limit is equal to or less than the plus suspect force limit. | Change the +reject force limit and/or the +suspect force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 25B | F S/R Limit Cross | The minus reject force limit is equal to or greater than the minus suspect force limit. | Change the - reject force limit and/or the - suspect force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 26A | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum is equal to or greater than the missing part maximum setting. | Change the missing part minimum and/or the missing part maximum setting through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 26D | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject absolute limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or - reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 26E | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or - suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 26F | Pretrigger Conflict | The pretrigger distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit. | Change the pretrigger distance or +reject absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 27A | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the minus suspect trigger limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or - suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 27B | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus reject absolute limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 27C | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus reject trigger limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or +reject trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 27D | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 27E | Abs Cutoff Conflict | The absolute cutoff distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger limit. | Change the absolute cutoff distance or +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 28A | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 28B | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or less than the plus suspect trigger limit. | Change the missing part maximum distance limit or +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 28C | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect trigger limit. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or +suspect trigger distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 28D | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance cutoff. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 28E | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part maximum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance cutoff. | Change the missing part maximum distance limit or absolute cutoff through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 28F | Missing Part Conflict | The missing part minimum distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance setting. This alarm occurs in absolute mode only. | Change the missing part minimum distance limit or absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 29A | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect absolute limit. | Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |
| 29C | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject absolute limit. | Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance |
| 29E | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |
| 29F | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus reject trigger limit. | Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance |
| 2A0 | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the plus suspect trigger limit. | Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |
| 2A1 | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus reject trigger limit. | Either increase the reject distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |
| 2A2 | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the minus suspect trigger limit. | Either increase the suspect distance limit or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2A3 | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance cutoff. This alarm can occur in all weld modes except absolute. | Either increase the absolute cutoff distance or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |
| 2A4 | Rapid Trav. Conflict | The rapid traverse distance is equal to or greater than the absolute distance. This alarm can occur only in the absolute welding mode. | Either increase the absolute cutoff distance or decrease the rapid traverse distance. |
| 2A6 | Hold Pressure Conflict | Hold pressure less than weld pressure. | Change the hold pressure to be greater than or equal to the weld pressure. |
| 2D6 | Trg Force Conflict | The trigger force is equal to or greater than the plus suspect weld force limit | Change the trigger force and/or the +suspect weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2D7 | Trg Force Conflict | The trigger force is equal to or greater than the plus reject weld force limit. | Change the trigger force and/or the +reject weld force limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2DC | Energy Comp Conflict | The minus reject energy limit is equal to or less than the minimum energy compensation value. | Change the - Reject energy limit or minimum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2DD | Energy Comp Conflict | The minus suspect energy limit is equal to or less than the maximum energy compensation value. This alarm occurs in time mode only. | Change the - Suspect energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2DE | Energy Comp Conflict | The plus energy reject limit is equal to or greater than the energy compensation maximum value | Change the +Reject energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2DF | Energy Comp Conflict | The plus suspect energy limit is equal to or greater than the energy compensation maximum value. | Change the +Suspect energy limit or maximum energy compensation through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2E2 | - S Trg > +S Abs | The minus suspect trigger limit is equal to or greater than the plus suspect absolute limit. | Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2E4 | - R Trg > +S Abs | The minus reject trigger limit is greater than or equal to the plus suspect absolute distance limit. | Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the +suspect absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2E5 | - R Trg > +R Abs | The minus reject trigger limit is greater than or equal to the plus reject absolute distance limit. | Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the +reject absolute distance limit through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2E6 | - S Trg > Abs | The minus suspect trigger limit is greater than or equal to the absolute distance. | Change the - suspect trigger limit and/or the absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2E7 | - R Trg > Abs | The minus reject trigger limit is greater than or equal to the absolute distance. | Change the - reject trigger limit and/or the absolute distance through the Alarm Information screen or Setup menu. |
| 2E9 | Ext U/S Delay Conflict | External trigger delay and pretrigger are both on. | Turn one off. |
| 2EA | Ext U/S Delay Conflict | External trigger delay has been enabled in weld setup, but no input pin has been defined. | Assign pin in System Configuration Menu. |
| 2EB | Part Clamp Setup | Either the input or output pin is not defined. | Assign a pin in the system configuration menu. |
| 2EF | Sync Setup | The sync input pin and the sync output pin are not both defined. | Define missing sync pin. |

Table B.5 Setup Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/ Cause | Corrective Action |
|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2F0 | Ext Signal | Ext Start requires both an input pin and an output pin to function. One of the pins is not defined. | Define both an input and an output pin for the SV Interlock. |
| 2F1 | Preset Conflict | Both the external selection of presets and sequencing are turned on. | Turn off one of these. |
| 2F2 | Min Trigger Conflict | The trigger force is set below the minimum allowable value. | Minimum trigger force is changed after the trigger force has been set, or if downloaded via host command. |
| 2F3 | Sequence Empty | Preset sequencing is enabled and a start signal has been received, but there is no sequence defined. | Define sequence. |

B.1.7 Overload Alarms

You encounter an overload alarm when your ultrasonic power supply has overloaded. The specific overload that has occurred is indicated by the message on your display.

The following table details the overload alarms that you can encounter on the 2000Xc Power Supply. The message on the display panel of the power supply is shown in the first column, with the more detailed message shown in the second column. The third and fourth columns indicate what condition led to the alarm and the corrective action you should take.

If you are using a Digital Power Supply, frequency, phase, current and voltage information is also available for each of the overload alarms listed in [Table B.6](#).

Table B.6 Overload Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 017 | Energy Braking Overload | UPS overload was detected in hold state. Alarm is called 'Energy Braking' because it could be caused by power supply overload during Energy Braking state, but the state is designed to ignore overloads. | Turn off Energy Braking, and call for application assistance. |
| 020 | Weld O/L | The ultrasonic power supply was overloaded during the weld cycle. The @ Time and frequency change (Freq Chg) are from trigger. Peak power is at the time of the overload. | Check the Peak Power reading in Weld Results. If Peak Power is above 100%, reduce your amplitude and/or force settings. |
| B21 | Seek Overload | The ultrasonic power supply was overloaded during the seek cycle at power up. | Check the stack. Repair/Replace the power supply module. For digital UPS only, check that the stack is properly attached and the RF cable is hooked up. |
| B22 | Test Overload | The ultrasonic power supply was overloaded during the test cycle. Pressing Test will clear the overload before the power supply goes into test mode. A new cycle can't be run until reset is pressed, even though test can be pressed again. | Check the stack. Repair/replace the power supply module. For digital UPS only, check that the stack is properly attached and the RF cable is hooked up. |
| B23 | Pretrigger Overload | The @Time is from start of pretrigger, the frequency and peak power is at the time of the overload. | Check the stack. Repair/replace the power supply module. |

Table B.6 Overload Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| B25 | Post Weld Seek O/L | An overload occurred during post weld seek. The @ Time and frequency change (Freq chg) are from the start of seek. The peak power is at the time of the overload. | Check the stack. Repair/replace the power supply module. |
| B26 | Afterburst Overload | An overload occurred during afterburst. The @ Time and frequency (Freq Chg) is from the start of afterburst. Peak power is at the time of the overload. | Check the stack. Repair/replace the power supply module. |

B.1.8 Note Alarms

In addition to the previously described alarms there are several Note alarms that the Controls can issue to alert you that an alarm is imminent, or that the cycle ran with authorized modifications.

The following table details the Note alarms you can encounter on the 2000Xc Power Supply. The message on the display panel of the power supply is shown in the first column; the detailed message is in the second column. The third and fourth columns indicate the condition that led to the alarm and the corrective action you should take.

Table B.7 Note Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 416 | Absolute Cutoff | The absolute cutoff distance that you requested has been reached. | Manually inspect the part. If, with acceptable parts, you repeatedly get this alarm, reset your Absolute cutoff. |
| 417 | Act Clr Not Reached | The actual absolute distance reached during the weld cycle did not reach the actuator clear distance that you set. | Using Horn Down to obtain size and distance readings, reset your Actuator Clear Distance to an obtainable value. |
| 418 | Max Energy Reached | The maximum energy compensation value has been reached. | None. This is only a notice that an adaptive control feature that you programmed is in use. |
| 421 | Sonics Disabled | A complete weld cycle has been run but the ultrasonics were disabled by a user defined input. | Remove 24V from Sonics Disable input; undefined Sonics Disable input pin. |
| 422 | USB Memory Nearly Full | The USB memory stick is over 98% full. At the current rate of storing, this is enough room for less than 100 welds. When full the welder will stop cycling. | Replace USB memory stick. |
| 41D | Time Extended | Weld time has been extended up to 50% for energy compensation. This alarm occurs in Time Mode only. | None. This is only a notice that an adaptive control feature that you programmed is in use. |
| 41E | Act Recal Suggested | A preset has been loaded and calibration should be run. | Calibrate actuator through Note menu, or calibrate from the Main Menu. |

Table B.7 Note Alarms and Messages, with Probable Cause and Corrective Action

| Alarm ID | Display Message | Alarm Condition/Cause | Corrective Action |
|----------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 41E | Act Recal Suggested | A preset has been loaded and calibration should be run. | Additional information will not be available if the carriage is not at upper limit, the actuator Novram has failed or the palm buttons are still pressed. This note will be disabled when the preset has been recalled via external preset selection, through the host or sequencing. |
| 41F | Collapse Cutoff | The collapse cutoff distance you requested has been reached. | Manually inspect the part. If you repeatedly get this alarm with acceptable parts, reset your collapse cutoff. |

Appendix C: Events

C.1 Events268

C.1 Events

The following table details the Events you can encounter on the 2000Xc Power Supply.

Table C.1 Event Records

| Event ID | Name | Description | Reason Required? |
|----------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| EV100 | Parameter Changed on a Validated Preset | Any change in any parameter on a validated preset will reset the preset's validated bit and create an event record. The parameter changed will be in current preset only and will not affect the saved preset until saved by the user. Operator will not be allowed to change any parameter in a validated preset. | Yes |
| EV101 | Preset Validation Bit is Set | This event is created every time the value of the preset validation bit is set manually from the Save/ Recall Preset screen by the user. | Yes |
| EV102 | New User Created | This event will be created when an Executive level user is creating a new User ID. | Yes |
| EV103 | User Modified | This event is created if the user changes the below parameters related to the User ID from menu or web service. User level Status Password Operator Authority | Yes |
| EV104 | Date Or Time Changed | This event is created when the user modifies the date or time of the system from menu. | Yes |
| EV105 | Factory Automation Mode | This event is created when the user toggles the factory automation status from menu. | Yes |
| EV106 | H/W Assembly Number Change | This event is created when any of the assembly number is changed from menu. | Yes |
| EV107 | H/W Verify Setup Change | This event is created when component verify setup is changed from menu. | Yes |
| EV108 | Software Version Change | This event is created at power up when software version of the code is found different from that in previous power up. | No |

Table C.1 Event Records

| Event ID | Name | Description | Reason Required? |
|----------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| EV109 | Authority Check Changed | This event is created when the user toggles the authority check from the menu. | Yes |
| EV110 | Actuator Cold Start | This event is created after an actuator cold start is done from the Diagnostic menu. | Yes |
| EV111 | RTC Low Battery Failure | <p>This event is created at power up if the battery providing power to RTC, when 24 volt is not present, is found to be low below a threshold.</p> <p>NOTICE The date or time of the system should be set from system Configuration menu at least once. Otherwise this event will occur at every power up independent of battery status.</p> | No |
| EV112 | Calibration Completed | This event is created after Pressure or Force calibration from menu is passed or failed. | Yes |
| EV113 | Preset Validation Bit is Cleared | This event is created every time a validation bit is cleared. | Yes |
| EV117 | Power On CRC Changed | This event is created at power up when code CRC is found different from that in previous power up. | No |
| EV118 | Clock Lost | This event is created when unexpected loss of lock condition occurs for CPU clock. | No |
| EV202 | Parameter Changed | Non-validated preset parameter changed. | No |
| EV303 | Horn Scan Completed | This event is created after Horn Scan is completed successfully. | No |
| EV416 | Program Firmware | This event is created after a new firmware is successfully uploaded to the system from Ethernet interface. | No |
| EV501 | User Login | User successfully logs in. | No |
| EV502 | User Logout | User logs out. | No |

Appendix D: Web Services

| | | |
|------------|---------------------------|------------|
| D.1 | Web Services | 272 |
| D.2 | Command List | 273 |
| D.3 | Error Codes | 285 |
| D.4 | IDs | 288 |

D.1 Web Services

D.1.1 Introduction

The 2000Xc Web Services provide functionality to access the system through Java Script Object Notation (JSON) web requests. This web access encompasses practically every aspect of the 2000Xc's features; from modifying and reading presets to configuring hardware and getting access to the internal logs of the power supply. In addition to that, the web service interface offers fully functional login/logout capability that can allow the client to remotely do anything that can be done from the front panel LCD.

This document gives the details of the web service implementation and interface to the 2000Xc. It also gives the details of JSON Service URLs and the data format required by the client to implement custom software for the interface. Lastly, this document provides examples of server/client interaction with details of the data to be expected.

D.1.2 Breakdown

The web service itself is broken down into 2 distinct portions: the URL string and the POST data.

D.1.3 Service URL

The 2000Xc has a built-in web server that can handle various web requests. In order to provide the web service functionality, the URL string that is to be sent to the power supply to initiate the service is of the form:

```
http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/<Service Name>
```

Where the <2000Xc IP Address> is the IP Address found on the System Information screen with the label "P/S IP" and the <Service Name> is the feature you wish to exploit. See [6.13 System Information](#) for details.

D.1.4 POST Method

As with many web requests there is typically additional data to be sent to the server that accompanies the request. The two most widely used methods are GET and POST. It is important to note that even though many of the services are attempting to retrieve, or GET, data from the 2000Xc, all services are accompanied with a POST request. If an attempt is made to use the GET method, a "Notfound" response will be returned to the client.

The POST data is in JSON format and is specific to each service. All data must follow JSON guidelines or else the server will reject the request with a specific error code.

D.2 Command List

This section will define all the possible web requests that can be sent to the server. All URLs and accompanying POST data is made available here. All POST data is required unless otherwise specified.

D.2.1 Login

If system traceability is required (Authority Check = Yes), a user must login through a specific service before accessing the system. A successful login shall create a unique session ID (SID) to be used in future service requests. The session remains active for a certain interval (the interval is defined in the system configuration as "Idle Logout Time"). Once the session is timed out, the logged in user shall be logged out automatically and the SID will be invalidated. An error code will be sent after the session is timed out for any future service requests with an invalid SID. The user shall be required to login again to access the system. This unique SID is also reset if the user logs out through the appropriate service request.

The user credentials received through JSON data shall be compared with the User ID list in the power supply. If the credentials match, then the user becomes logged in and becomes the active user for which all records will be associated with. Additionally, if someone is logged in via the web services, then nobody can login through the front panel unless a successful logout command is received from the web services.

Upon requesting a login, the success status is returned along with the unique SID that needs to be retained for all future commands. For all service requests after logging in, if the associated SID in the POST data does not match with the ID received in the login JSON Response, an error code will be sent. It is very important to note that since the logout function also requires this SID, then if the SID is lost or forgotten you must wait for the idle logout time to expire or power the 2000Xc off and back on before any access will be granted to the power supply.

URL


`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SystemLogin`

POST Data

```
{"UserId":"ADMIN","Password":"123456Aa#"}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"Sid":12345}
```

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>To bypass Authority Check, set the WebSrv AuthCheck function to OFF. See 6.11.38 WebSrv AuthCheck for more information.</p> |

D.2.2 Logout

The logout service is only necessary when Authority Check is enabled and another user wishes to login either from the front panel or through the web services again.

The act of logging out of the system creates an event that is stored in the Event History.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SystemLogout`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345}
```

Successful Response

```
{ "ErrorCode":0,"UserId":"ADMIN"}
```

D.2.3 Get Software Version

This service is specifically used to get the 3 main versions of software running inside the 2000Xc: SBC software, Controller Board software, and Power Supply software.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetPSVersionNum`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"S/WVersion":"12.0","SBCVersion":"12.0","P/SVersionNum":"191"}
```

D.2.4 Get Last Weld Result

This service request satisfies the need to get weld results on a regular basis at the end of every weld. Typically, monitoring the 2000Xc Ready signal should trigger a request to get the most recent weld result using this service.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetWeldResult`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345}
```

Successful Response

```
{ "ErrorCode":0,  
  "1":Value*,  
  "2":Value*,  
  ...  
  ...  
  "37":Value*}
```


*Some values are strings, others are numeric. Regardless of the data type, the response follows proper JSON formatting.

See Weld History IDs for the lookup table of IDs in [Table D.3](#).

D.2.5 Set Preset Value

This service is the access point for setting any value that is stored in the Preset. Any time a value is written with this service, the value will be stored in the Current Preset only. Setting Preset values in this manner follows the same rules for User Authority as does the front panel. If a user does not have proper privileges to modify a value, an error code will be returned.

There are two methods of using this service. The first is setting a single value on each service request, or there is also an option to send bulk Preset values to be set using a JSON array. This is useful if the entire Preset is stored externally and needs to be copied to the Power Supply.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Since a reason for changing a Preset value is only sometimes needed (modifying a validated Preset), then instead of keeping track of when a reason is required or not, simply send a reason with every change and the Power Supply will take care of it.</p> |

D.2.5.1 Setting a Single Value

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SetPresetValue`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"ParamId":177,"ParamValue":0.250}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0}
```

D.2.5.2 Setting Multiple Values

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SetPresetValue`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"Preset":[{"ParamId":177,"ParamValue":0.250,"Reason":"xyz"},{"ParamId":177,"ParamValue":0.250,"Reason":"xyz"}]}
```

Successful Response


```
{"ErrorCode":0}
```

All other Error Codes can be found in [Table D.1](#) and the list of Parameter IDs can be found in [Table D.2](#).

D.2.6 Set System Value

This service is the access point for setting any value that is considered system related. Setting system values in this manner follows the same rules for User Authority as does the front panel. If a user does not have proper privileges to modify a value, an error code will be returned.

There are two methods of using this service. The first is setting a single value on each service request, or there is also an option to send bulk system values to be set using a JSON array. This is useful if multiple power supplies need to be setup the same way.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>Since a reason for changing a system value is only sometimes needed (modifying an assembly value), then instead of keeping track of when a reason is required or not, simply send a reason with every change and the Power Supply will take care of it.</p> |

D.2.6.1 Setting a Single Value

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SetSystemConfigValue`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"ParamId":1151,"ParamValue":1,"Reason":"xyz"}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0}
```

D.2.6.2 Setting Multiple Values

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/ SetSystemConfigValue`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"SystemConfig":[{"ParamId":1151,"ParamValue":1,"Reason":"xyz"},{"ParamId":1141,"ParamValue":1,"Reason":"xyz"}]}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0}
```

All other Error Codes can be found in [Table D.1](#) and the list of Parameter IDs can be found in [Table D.2](#).

D.2.7 Get Preset Value

In order to get the value of any given Preset setting, this simple service request is available. Simply provide the appropriate parameter ID for the desired Preset value and the request will return the value.

The returned value is the value stored in the Current Preset.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetPresetValue`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"ParamId":177}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"ParamValue":0.250}
```

D.2.8 Get System Value

In order to get any given system value this simple service request is available. Simply provide the appropriate parameter ID for the desired system value and the request will return the value.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetSystemConfigValue`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"ParamId":1151}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"ParamValue":1}
```

D.2.9 Save Preset

One of the most widely used features of the 2000Xc is the ability to save Presets. This service is the method of doing so. The only requirement is the Preset Number that you want to save the preset to. The 2000Xc has intelligence to automatically name a preset if none is supplied. See [6.18 Save/Recall Presets](#) for details on how the presets are automatically named. The name of the saved Preset will always be returned in the response.

When saving a Preset, the data that is stored in the Current Preset will be copied into the Preset location. In the 2000Xc those locations can be anywhere from 1 to 1000.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SavePreset`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"PresetNum":24,"PresetName":"Red Part"}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"PresetName":"Red Part"}
```

Successful Response – No Name Given

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"PresetName":"Tm 0.25S"}
```

D.2.10 Recall Preset

The ability to recall a Preset is also available via a web service request. There are only 3 conditions required to recall a Preset: the proper authority is given to the logged in user, the Preset requested has previously been saved, and the Power Supply is in Ready.

If an attempt is made to recall a Preset when the system is not in Ready, then the appropriate error code is sent. Simply retry the request if this is the error response received. If multiple retries fails, then something is preventing the Power Supply from being Ready and further investigation should be done.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/RecallPreset`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"PresetNum":24}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"PresetName":"Tm 0.25S"}
```

D.2.11 Verify Preset

Verifying a Preset is necessary before running it. This web service request makes that possible. All that is needed is the Preset number and the SID. Currently there is no way to know from a web service request why a Preset verification has failed. One possible reason is because the Power Supply is not Ready.

Verifying a Preset will also recall the Preset.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/VerifyPreset`

POST Data


```
{"Sid":12345,"PresetNum":24}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0}
```

D.2.12 Clear Preset

Clearing a Preset is not always a necessary measure to take due to the number of Presets available in the system. However the ability to remove a preset from memory is sometimes desired.

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Clearing a Preset is not necessary before Saving or Overwriting. |

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/ClearPreset`

POST Data

`{"Sid":12345,"PresetNum":24}`

Successful Response

`{"ErrorCode":0}`

D.2.13 Get Number of Events

Due to the nature of getting the Power Supply Event information, this web service is necessary to be called before any request to get the Event History. This service will simply return the total number of Events that the Power Supply has stored in its memory.

URL

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetNumEvents`

POST Data

`{"Sid":12345}`

Successful Response

`{"ErrorCode":0,"TotalEventPresent":200}`

When the maximum number of records allowed is reached, the Power Supply will display the message: "History Memory Full".

D.2.14 Get Event History

Once the number of Events is known via the Get Number of Events request, then this service can be properly called. Since there are internal limitations to data bandwidth, only a maximum of 50 Events can be requested at any given time. There are two ways of getting the Event information.

1. Get the most recent 50 Events. This is accomplished by setting both the "From" and "To" values to 0
2. Get any random chunk of up to 50 consecutive events. E.g. Event # 120-169

In the POST data request there are two additional fields required along with the SID. These are the "From" and "To" values. These fields are how the specific Event #s are requested. The difference between these values cannot exceed 50.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetEventHistory

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"From":120,"To":169}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,  
"EventData":[  
{"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"9":Value},  
{"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"9":Value},  
...  
{"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"9":Value}]}
```

See Event History IDs for the lookup table of IDs in [Table D.4](#).

D.2.15 Get Number of Weld History

Due to the nature of getting the Power Supply Weld History, this web service is necessary to be called before any request to get the Weld History. This service will simply return the total number of Welds that the Power Supply has stored in its memory.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetNumWeldData

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"TotalWeldDataPresent":200}
```

D.2.16 Get Weld History

Once the number of Welds is known via the Get Number of Weld History request, then this service can be properly called. Since there are internal limitations to data bandwidth, only a maximum of 50 Welds can be requested at any given time. There are two ways of getting the Weld data.

1. Get the most recent 50 Welds. This is accomplished by setting both the "From" and "To" values to 0
2. Get any random chunk of up to 50 consecutive welds. E.g. Weld # 120-169

In the POST data request there are two additional fields required along with the SID. These are the "From" and "To" values. These fields are the index into the array of welds stored in memory from 0 to 99999. The difference between these values cannot exceed 50.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetWeldHistory

POST Data

```

{"Sid":12345,"From":120,"To":169}
Successful Response
{"ErrorCode":0,
"WeldData":[
{"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"37":Value},
{"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"37":Value},
...
{"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"37":Value}]}

```

See Weld History IDs for the lookup table of IDs in the [Table D.3](#)

D.2.17 Get Number of Alarms

Due to the nature of getting the Power Supply Alarm information, this web service is necessary to be called before any request to get the Alarm Log. This service will simply return the total number of Alarms that the Power Supply has stored in its memory.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetNumAlarms

POST Data

```

{"Sid":12345}

```

Successful Response

```

{"ErrorCode":0,"TotalAlarmPresent":200}

```

D.2.18 Get Alarm Log

Once the number of Alarms is known via the Get Number of Alarms request, then this service can be properly called. Since there are internal limitations to data bandwidth, only a maximum of 50 Alarms can be requested at any given time. There are two ways of getting the Alarm information.

1. Get the most recent 50 Alarms. This is accomplished by setting both the "From" and "To" values to 0
2. Get any random chunk of up to 50 consecutive alarms. E.g. Alarm # 120-169

In the POST data request there are two additional fields required along with the SID. These are the "From" and "To" values. These fields are how the specific Alarm #s are requested. The difference between these values cannot exceed 50.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetAlarmLogData

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"From":120,"To":169}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,  
  "AlarmData":[  
    {"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"9":Value},  
    {"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"9":Value},  
    ...  
    {"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"9":Value}]}
```

See Alarm Log IDs for the lookup table of IDs in the [Table D.5](#).

D.2.19 Get Number of Users

Due to the nature of getting the users info from the Power Supply, this web service is necessary to be called before any request to get the User Table. This service will simply return the total number of Users that the Power Supply has stored in its memory; both active and inactive.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetUserCount

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,"TotalUserPresent":200}
```

D.2.20 Get Users

Once the number of Users is known via the Get Number of Users request, then this service can be properly called. Since there are internal limitations to data bandwidth, only a maximum of 50 Users can be requested at any given time. There are two ways of getting the User information.

1. Get the most recent 50 Users. This is accomplished by setting both the "From" and "To" values to 0
2. Get any random chunk of up to 50 consecutive Users. E.g. User # 120-169

In the POST data request there are two additional fields required along with the SID. These are the "From" and "To" values. These fields are how the specific User #s are requested. The difference between these values cannot exceed 50.

URL

http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/GetUsers

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"From":120,"To":169}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0,
  "UserDetails":[
    {"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"7":Value},
    {"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"7":Value},
    ...
    {"1":Value,"2":Value,...,"7":Value}]}
```

See UserID Table IDs for the lookup table of IDs in the [Table D.6](#).

D.2.21 Create/Update User

Creating and Updating Users are two separate web requests, but they are grouped together here because they have the same POST data and very similar requirements. There are minor differences when it comes to error codes as a response, but they are described in [Table D.1](#).

User Level is key when dealing with creating or updating user data. Only certain levels of authority can manage this and therefore the appropriate user must be logged in through web services to successfully complete these requests.

There is no method of deleting a User. Users must always remain in the power supply and therefore can either be activated or deactivated. This is referred to as the "Status" value that is sent with this request. It can be either 0 or 1 for inactive or active respectively.

There are a maximum of 1000 total users allowed in the power supply and a maximum of 500 active users at any given time. Any attempt to add additional users will result in an error as well as any attempt to modify a particular user to be active that causes the threshold to be exceeded will also result in an error.

The new User or updated user information must follow the password guidelines.

URL-Create

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/SetUser`

URL-Update

`http://<2000Xc IP Address>/Services/UpdateUser`

POST Data

```
{"Sid":12345,"UserId":"User1","Password":"Def@1234","UserLevel":1,"Status":1,"PassExpTime":20,"Reason":"John Left Company"}
```

Successful Response

```
{"ErrorCode":0}
```

Password Expire Time is in minutes.

The lookup table for User Level IDs can be found in the [Table D.7](#).

D.3 Error Codes

Table D.1 Error Codes

| Error Code | Type | Description |
|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 | Success | All services will respond with this Error Code if there are no errors preventing the web service from being accepted. |
| 1 | Login Failure | This error will occur when attempting to login when another user is already logged in. In order to prevent this error from occurring, there can be no other users logged in to the 2000Xc either from the web services OR from the front panel. |
| 2 | Not Logged In | This error will occur when any service is requested but the Login service has not yet been successful. Either login via the Login web service or disable the Authority Check option from the System Configuration menu. |
| 3 | Login Failure | This particular login failure will occur when the user attempts to login with incorrect username or password information. |
| 4 | Login Failure | This is a specific error code that comes when a user is attempting to login for the first time. A first time login is not permitted through the web services. The user must use the front panel to modify his password after first time login then use the web services. |
| 5 | Verify Preset Failure | If verifying the preset fails for any reason, this error code will be sent and the preset parameters must be inspected. |
| 6 | System Not Ready | This error code can be sent in reply to various service requests. Most typically it is used when attempting to modify or save a preset when the system is not in the Ready state. |
| 7 | Range Error | This error code is specific to trying to set any value that is out of bounds for the given parameter. This can be anything from the system clock to weld parameters to preset numbers. |
| 8 | Invalid Data | This error code is sent when the requested data to be set is not a valid ID. For example, if setting a preset value is sent with a param ID of 99999, this is not a valid value. |
| 9 | Range Error | This error code is sent if the data requested for a specified range is not available. For example, if the system only has 10 alarms and the data is requested from 50 to 99, then this error will be generated. |

Table D.1 Error Codes

| Error Code | Type | Description |
|------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 | User Creation Failure | This error code is sent when requesting to add another user to the power supply list and the max number of active users has already been met (500 active users). This can also happen when attempting to modify a user and the modification puts it over the max number of active users. |
| 11 | User Creation Failure | This error code is sent when requesting to add a new user to the power supply database and the max number of users have already been added (1000 users) |
| 12 | User Creation Failure | This error code is sent when the password that is requested to be made for a new user does not meet the requirements. 1 Capital letter, 1 lower case letter, 1 number, 1 special character, between 8-10 total characters. |
| 13 | Too Much Data | This error is specifically sent in response to requests for log data. Weld History, Alarm Logs, Event Logs, and User ID table information are only able to be processed in chunks of 50 entries at a time. If the web request is made for more than 50 entries at a time, this error code will be returned. |
| 14 | User Change Failure | This error code is sent if the requested changes to a user account cannot be made. For example, if the UserID does not exist. |
| 15 | Unauthorized Access | This error is sent whenever a user, most likely an Operator, attempts to perform an action that they are not authorized to make. |
| 16 | Login Failure | This error code is sent when the user's password has expired. |
| 17 | User Creation Failure | This error code is sent specifically when the user ID that is requested to be created already exists in the database. |
| 18 | Login Failure | This error code is sent when the user has attempted to login unsuccessfully too many times. This causes the user to be locked out of the power supply. |
| 19 | Data Request Failure | This error can occur if data is requested but cannot be processed due to an internal connection failure. Retry the web request if this error is received. |
| 20 | Invalid Data | This error code is sent when a change is made to the system and a reason for change is required but was not sent. Retry the web request but be sure to include the "Reason" in the POST data. |
| 21 | Recall Preset Failure | This error code occurs when an attempt is made to recall a preset that has never been saved before. |

Table D.1 Error Codes

| Error Code | Type | Description |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 22 | Invalid Data | This is a global error code that will be sent if any data is not recognized in the web request. |
| 23 | Invalid Data | This a global error code that will be sent if the proper JSON format for data is not followed. |
| 24 | Unauthorized Access | This error code is sent specifically when Automation Mode is enabled and therefore the requested access is not permitted. |
| 25 | Data Request Failure | This error can occur if data is requested but cannot be processed due to an internal communication timeout. Retry the web request if this error is received. |
| 26 | Invalid Data | This error code is sent specifically when attempting to modify the User I/O input to a value that is not valid. |
| 27 | Invalid Data | This error code is sent specifically when attempting to modify the User I/O input to a value that is not available for the current setup. |
| 28 | Invalid Data | Authority Check off. |

D.4 IDs

D.4.1 Parameter IDs

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| Weld Setup | | | | | |
| 15 | Amplitude1 | Amplitude | % | 10 | 100 |
| 15 | Amplitude1 | Amplitude | µm | * | * |
| 249 | AMP_1 | Amplitude | % | 10 | 100 |
| 249 | AMP_1 | Amplitude | µm | * | * |
| 35 | Downspeed | Downspeed | % | 1 | 100 |
| 87 | Hold_Time | Hold Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 248 | PRESSURE1 | Weld Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 248 | PRESSURE1 | Weld Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 127 | Trigger_Type | Trigger | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 128 | Trigger_Distance | Trigger Distance | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 128 | Trigger_Distance | Trigger Distance | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 129 | Trigger_Force | Trigger Force | lb | 5 | 159 |
| 129 | Trigger_Force | Trigger Force | N | 22 | 707 |
| Save/Recall Presets | | | | | |
| 137 | Validate_Preset | Validate | N/A | - | - |
| 138 | Lock_Preset | Lock | N/A | - | - |
| Current Setup | | | | | |
| 117 | Test_Amplitude | Test Amplitude | % | 10 | 100 |
| 117 | Test_Amplitude | Test Amplitude | µm | * | * |
| Amplitude Step | | | | | |
| 206 | Amplitude_Step_Enable | Amplitude Fixed/Step | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 15 | Amplitude1 | Amplitude A | % | 10 | 100 |
| 15 | Amplitude1 | Amplitude A | µm | * | * |
| 23 | Amplitude2 | Amplitude B | % | 10 | 100 |
| 23 | Amplitude2 | Amplitude B | µm | * | * |
| 17 | Amp_Step_Col_Val | Step @ Col | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 17 | Amp_Step_Col_Val | Step @ Col | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 18 | Amp_Step_Ext_Enable | Step @ Ext Sig | N/A | 1 | 1 |
| 19 | Amp_Step_Time_Val | Step @ T | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 20 | Amp_Step_E_Val | Step @ E | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 21 | Amp_Step_Power_Val | Step @ Pwr | % | 1.0 | 100.0 |
| 21 | Amp_Step_Power_Val | Step @ Pwr | W | ** | ** |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| Pressure Step | | | | | |
| 246 | PRESSURE2_FLAG | Pressure Step/Fixed | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 248 | PRESSURE_1 | Pressure A | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 248 | PRESSURE_1 | Pressure A | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 247 | PRESSURE_2 | Pressure B | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 247 | PRESSURE_2 | Pressure B | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 240 | PRESSURE_TRIGABSVALUE | | N/A | | |
| 241 | PRESSURE_TRIGCOLVALUE | Step @ Col | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 241 | PRESSURE_TRIGCOLVALUE | Step @ Col | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 242 | PRESSURE_TRIGEXTFLAG | Step @ Ext Sig | N/A | 1 | 1 |
| 243 | PRESSURE_TRIGTIMEVALUE | Step @ T | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 244 | PRESSURE_TRIGENERGYVALUE | Step @ E | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 245 | PRESSURE_TRIGPOWERVALUE | Step @ Pwr | % | 1.0 | 100.0 |
| 245 | PRESSURE_TRIGPOWERVALUE | Step @ Pwr | W | ** | ** |
| 250 | PRSTPARAMDEFID | | | | |
| Hold Pressure | | | | | |
| 211 | HOLD_PRESSURE_FLAG | Hold Pressure | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 74 | HOLD_PRESSURE | Hold Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 74 | HOLD_PRESSURE | Hold Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| Rapid Traverse | | | | | |
| 110 | Rapid_Traverse_Enable | Rapid Traverse | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 109 | Rapid_Traverse_Distance | R/T @ D | in | 0.1000 | 4.0000 |
| 109 | Rapid_Traverse_Distance | R/T @ D | mm | 2.54 | 101.60 |
| Pretrigger | | | | | |
| 99 | Pretrigger_Enable | Pretrigger | N/A | 0 | 3 |
| 100 | Pretrigger_Amplitude | Pretr Amp | % | 10 | 100 |
| 100 | Pretrigger_Amplitude | Pretr Amp | µm | * | * |
| 101 | Pretrigger_Delay | Pretrg@T | s | 0.010 | 10.000 |
| 102 | Pretrigger_Delay_Enable | | | 0 | 1 |
| 103 | Pretrigger_Distance | Pretrg@D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 103 | Pretrigger_Distance | Pretrg@D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 104 | Pretrigger_Distance_Enable | | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| Write In Field | | | | | |
| 147 | Write_In_Field1 | WriteIn Field1 | N/A | | |
| 148 | Write_In_Field2 | WriteIn Field2 | N/A | | |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| Batch Setup | | | | | |
| 27 | Batch_Count_Enable | Enable | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 28 | Batch_Count_With_Alarm | Count With Alarms | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 29 | Batch_Count_Reset_On_Alarm | Reset to Zero | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 30 | Batch_Count | Batch Count | N/A | 1 | 100000 |
| Afterburst | | | | | |
| 4 | Afterburst_Flag | Afterburst | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | Afterburst_Amplitude | AB Amplitude | % | 10 | 100 |
| 1 | Afterburst_Amplitude | AB Amplitude | µm | * | * |
| 3 | Afterburst_Delay | AB Delay | s | 0.050 | 2.000 |
| 5 | Afterburst_Time | AB Time | s | 0.100 | 2.000 |
| Act Clr Output | | | | | |
| 14 | Act_Clear_Enable | Act Clr Output | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 13 | Act_Clear_Dist | Act Clr D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 13 | Act_Clear_Dist | Act Clr D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| Cycle Aborts | | | | | |
| 44 | Cycle_Abort_Enable | Cycle Aborts | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 71 | Ground_Detect_Enable | Gnd Det Abort | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 78 | Missing_Part_Enable | Missing Part | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 81 | MissingPart_Min | Minimum | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 81 | MissingPart_Min | Minimum | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 82 | MissingPart_Max | Maximum | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 82 | MissingPart_Max | Maximum | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| Pressure Limit | | | | | |
| 96 | Pressure_Limit_Enable | Pressure Limit | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 94 | Pressure_Limit_Minus | - Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 94 | Pressure_Limit_Minus | - Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 95 | Pressure_Limit_Plus | + Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 95 | Pressure_Limit_Plus | + Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| Digital UPS | | | | | |
| 173 | Clear_Mem_At_Reset_Enable | Memory Reset | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 207 | Mem_Store_At_End | Memory | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 208 | Timed_Seek | Timed Seek | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| Power Match Curve | | | | | |
| 165 | PMC_Enable | Pwr Match Curve | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 161 | PMC_High_Limit | +R Band | % | 1 | 100 |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| 162 | PMC_Low_Limit | -R Band | % | 1 | 100 |
| Weld Setup - Ext U/S Delay | | | | | |
| 58 | Ext_Trigger_Delay | Ext U/S Delay | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| Weld Setup - Weld Mode | | | | | |
| 146 | Weld_Mode | Weld Mode | N/A | 0 | 5 |
| 177 | Time_Mode_Value | Time Mode | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 145 | Energy_Mode_Value | Weld Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 83 | Peak_Power_Mode_Value | Peak Power | % | 1.0% | 100.0% |
| 83 | Peak_Power_Mode_Value | Peak Power | W | * | * |
| 38 | Collapse_Mode_Distance | Collapse | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 38 | Collapse_Mode_Distance | Collapse | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 8 | Absolute_Mode_Dist, | Absolute | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 8 | Absolute_Mode_Dist, | Absolute | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 112 | Scrub_Time_Enable | Scrub Time Enable | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 111 | Scrub_Time | Gnd Detect | s | 0.001 | 0.500 |
| 64 | Frequency_Offset_Enable | Frequency Offset | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 113 | Post_Weld_Seek_Enable | Post Weld Seek | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| Weld Setup - Weld Mode - Time | | | | | |
| 25 | Auto_Scale_Enable (Graphs) | Auto Scale | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| Weld Setup - Weld Mode - Energy | | | | | |
| 48 | Energy_Braking_Enable | Energy Brake | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 47 | Energy_Brake_Time | Energy Brake | s | 0.010 | 1.000 |
| 73 | Weld_Pressure | Weld Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 73 | Weld_Pressure | Weld Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 77 | Max_Timeout | Timeout | s | 0.050 | 30.000 |
| 72 | Hold_Force | Hold Force | lb | | |
| Weld Setup - Weld Mode - Ground Detect | | | | | |
| 24 | Scrub_Time_Amp | Scrub Amp | % | 10 | 100 |
| 24 | Scrub_Time_Amp | Scrub Amp | µm | * | * |
| Setup Limits | | | | | |
| 233 | ABSDIST_MLT | - Absolute Distance | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 233 | ABSDIST_MLT | - Absolute Distance | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 232 | ABSDIST_PLT | + Absolute Distance | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 232 | ABSDIST_PLT | + Absolute Distance | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 221 | AMPA_MLT | - AMP A | % | 10 | 100 |
| 221 | AMPA_MLT | - AMP A | µm | * | * |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|-----|------------------|---------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| 220 | AMPA_PLT | + AMP A | % | 10 | 100 |
| 220 | AMPA_PLT | + AMP A | µm | * | * |
| 231 | COLLAPSEDIST_MLT | - Collapse Distance | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 231 | COLLAPSEDIST_MLT | - Collapse Distance | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 230 | COLLAPSEDIST_PLT | + Collapse Distance | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 230 | COLLAPSEDIST_PLT | + Collapse Distance | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 236 | SCRUBAMP_PLT | + Scrub Amplitude | % | 10 | 100 |
| 236 | SCRUBAMP_PLT | + Scrub Amplitude | µm | * | * |
| 237 | SCRUBAMP_MLT | - Scrub Amplitude | % | 10 | 100 |
| 237 | SCRUBAMP_MLT | - Scrub Amplitude | µm | * | * |
| 215 | DOWNSPEED_MLT | - Down Speed | % | 1 | 100 |
| 214 | DOWNSPEED_PLT | + Down Speed | % | 1 | 100 |
| 217 | HOLDPRESSURE_MLT | - Hold Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 217 | HOLDPRESSURE_MLT | - Hold Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 216 | HOLDPRESSURE_PLT | + Hold Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 216 | HOLDPRESSURE_PLT | + Hold Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 219 | HOLDTIME_MLT | - Hold Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 218 | HOLDTIME_PLT | + Hold Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 229 | PEAKPOWER_MLT | - Peak Power | % | 1.0% | 100.0% |
| 229 | PEAKPOWER_MLT | - Peak Power | W | * | * |
| 228 | PEAKPOWER_PLT | + Peak Power | % | 1.0% | 100.0% |
| 228 | PEAKPOWER_PLT | + Peak Power | W | ** | ** |
| 235 | SCRUBTIME_MLT | - Scrub Time | s | 0.001 | 0.500 |
| 234 | SCRUBTIME_PLT | + Scrub Time | s | 0.001 | 0.500 |
| 239 | TRIGDIST_MLT | - Trigger Distance | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 239 | TRIGDIST_MLT | - Trigger Distance | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 238 | TRIGDIST_PLT | + Trigger Distance | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 238 | TRIGDIST_PLT | + Trigger Distance | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 223 | TRIGFORCE_MLT | - Trig Force | lb | 5 | 159 |
| 223 | TRIGFORCE_MLT | - Trig Force | N | 22 | 707 |
| 222 | TRIGFORCE_PLT | + Trig Force | lb | 5 | 159 |
| 222 | TRIGFORCE_PLT | + Trig Force | N | 22 | 707 |
| 227 | WELDENERGY_MLT | - Weld Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 226 | WELDENERGY_PLT | + Weld Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 213 | WELDPRESSURE_MLT | - Weld Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 213 | WELDPRESSURE_MLT | - Weld Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |
| 212 | WELDPRESSURE_PLT | + Weld Pressure | PSI | 10 | 100 |
| 212 | WELDPRESSURE_PLT | + Weld Pressure | kPa | 69 | 689 |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| 225 | WELDTIME_MLT | - Weld Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 224 | WELDTIME_PLT | + Weld Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| Reject Limits | | | | | |
| 106 | Reject_Limits_Enable | Reject Limits | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 108 | Reject_Reset_Req_Enable | Reset Required | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 9 | Absolute_MLR, Reject - | -R Abs D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 11 | Absolute_PLR, Reject + | +R Abs D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 39 | Col_MLR | -R Col D | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 39 | Col_MLR | -R Col D | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 41 | Col_PLR | +R Col D | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 41 | Col_PLR | +R Col D | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 210 | DOWNSPEEDMLR | -R Downspeed | in/s | 0.3 | 7.0 |
| 210 | DOWNSPEEDMLR | -R Downspeed | mm/s | 8 | 178 |
| 209 | DOWNSPEEDPLR | +R Downspeed | in/s | 0.3 | 7.0 |
| 209 | DOWNSPEEDPLR | +R Downspeed | mm/s | 8 | 178 |
| 53 | Energy_MLR | -R Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 56 | Energy_PLR | +R Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 90 | Peak_Power_MLR | -R Pk Power | % | 1 | 100 |
| 90 | Peak_Power_MLR | -R Pk Power | W | ** | ** |
| 92 | Peak_Power_PLR | +R Pk Power | % | 1 | 100 |
| 92 | Peak_Power_PLR | +R Pk Power | W | ** | ** |
| 69 | SBL_Frequency_Enable | N/A | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 68 | SBL_Max_Frequency | +R Freq | Hz | 29400 | 30600 |
| 67 | SBL_Min_Frequency | -R Freq | Hz | 29400 | 30600 |
| 118 | Time_MLR | -R Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 120 | Time_PLR | +R Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 123 | Trigger_Distance_MLR | -R Trg D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 123 | Trigger_Distance_MLR | -R Trg D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 125 | Trigger_Distance_PLR | +R Trg D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 125 | Trigger_Distance_PLR | +R Trg D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 149 | Weld_Force_MLR | -R Weld F | lb | 10 | 159 |
| 149 | Weld_Force_MLR | -R Weld F | N | 44 | 707 |
| 151 | Weld_Force_PLR | +R Weld F | lb | 10 | 159 |
| 151 | Weld_Force_PLR | +R Weld F | N | 44 | 707 |
| Suspect Limits | | | | | |
| 115 | Suspect_Limits_Enable | Suspect Limits | N/A | 0.000 | 1.000 |
| 116 | Suspect_Limits_Reset_Req | Reset Required | N/A | 0 | 1 |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| 10 | Absolute_MLS, Suspect - | -S Abs D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 10 | Absolute_MLS, Suspect - | -S Abs D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 12 | Absolute_PLS, Suspect + | +S Abs D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 12 | Absolute_PLS, Suspect + | +S Abs D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 40 | Col_MLS | -S Col D | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 40 | Col_MLS | -S Col D | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 42 | Col_PLS | +S Col D | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 42 | Col_PLS | +S Col D | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 54 | Energy_MLS | -S Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 57 | Energy_PLS | +S Energy | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 59 | Frequency_MLR | Frequency MLR | | | |
| 60 | Frequency_MLS | Frequency MLS | | | |
| 61 | Frequency_PLR | Frequency PLR | | | |
| 62 | Frequency_PLS | Frequency PLS | | | |
| 63 | Frequency_Offset_Value | Frequency Offset | Hz | 0 | 600 |
| 75 | Hold_Time_Enable | Hold Time Enable | | 0 | 1 |
| 203 | Amp_Step_Distance_Val | Amplitude Step Distance | | | |
| 204 | Amp_Step_Force_Val | Amplitude Step Force | | | |
| 91 | Peak_Power_MLS | -S Pk Power | % | 1.0 | 100.0 |
| 91 | Peak_Power_MLS | -S Pk Power | W | ** | ** |
| 93 | Peak_Power_PLS | +S Pk Power | % | 1.0 | 100.0 |
| 93 | Peak_Power_PLS | +S Pk Power | W | ** | ** |
| 119 | Time_MLS | -S Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 121 | Time_PLS | +S Time | s | 0.010 | 30.000 |
| 124 | Trigger_Distance_MLS | -S Trg D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 124 | Trigger_Distance_MLS | -S Trg D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 126 | Trigger_Distance_PLS | +S Trg D | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |
| 126 | Trigger_Distance_PLS | +S Trg D | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 150 | Weld_Force_MLS | -S Weld F | lb | 10 | 159 |
| 150 | Weld_Force_MLS | -S Weld F | N | 44 | 707 |
| 152 | Weld_Force_PLS | +S Weld F | lb | 10 | 159 |
| 152 | Weld_Force_PLS | +S Weld F | N | 44 | 707 |
| Control Limits | | | | | |
| 85 | Peak_Power_Cutoff_Enable | Peak Power Cutoff | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 43 | Control_Limits_Enable | Control Limits | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 7 | Abs_Cutoff_Flag | Absolute Cutoff | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 6 | Abs_Cutoff_Distance | Absolute Cutoff Distance | in | 0.1250 | 4.0000 |

Table D.2 Parameter IDs

| ID | JSON Description | Description | Unit | Min Value | Max Value |
|----|----------------------------|--------------------------|------|-----------|-----------|
| 6 | Abs_Cutoff_Distance | Absolute Cutoff Distance | mm | 3.18 | 101.60 |
| 37 | Col_Cutoff_Distance | ColCut | in | 0.0004 | 1.0000 |
| 37 | Col_Cutoff_Distance | ColCut | mm | 0.01 | 25.40 |
| 49 | Energy_Compensation_Enable | Energy Comp | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 52 | Energy_Comp_ML | Energy Min | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 55 | Energy_Comp_PL | Energy Max | J | 1 | 45000 |
| 84 | Peak_Power_Cutoff | Pk Pwr Cut | % | 1.0 | 100.0 |
| 84 | Peak_Power_Cutoff | Pk Pwr Cut | W | ** | ** |
| 36 | Col_Cutoff_Enable | ColCut | N/A | 0 | 1 |

Main Menu - System Configuration

| | | | | | |
|------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|------|----------|-------|
| 32 | Act_Assembly_Number | Actuator Assembly | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 33 | PS_Assembly_Number | P/S Assembly | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 34 | Stack_Assembly_Number | Stack Assembly | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 1140 | Basic_Mode_Enable | Basic Mode | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1141 | Horn_Clamp_Enable | Horn Clamp | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1142 | UDI_Scan_Enable | UDI Scan | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1143 | Automation_Mode_Enable | Automation Mode | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1144 | Mem_Full_Continue_Enable | Memory Full Continue | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1146 | Authority_Check_Enable | Authority Check | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1147 | Barcode_Start_Char | Barcode Start | N/A | 1 | 1 |
| 1148 | Assembly_Num_Stack | Assembly Number - Stack | N/A | 0 | 11 |
| 1149 | Assembly_Num_Act | Assembly Number - Actuator | N/A | 0 | 11 |
| 1150 | Assembly_Num_PS | Assembly Number - Power Supply | N/A | 0 | 11 |
| 1151 | Verify_Hardware | Verify Hardware | N/A | 1 | 7 |
| 1153 | Beeper_On_Estop | Beeper On Estop | N/A | 0 | 1 |
| 1155 | Idle_Time_Logout | Idle Time Logout | N/A | 2 | 99999 |
| 1159 | Digital_Tune_Freq | Digital Tune Frequency | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 1160 | PS_Frequency | Power Supply Frequency | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| 1163 | Time_Of_Day | Time of Day | Time | hh:mm | |
| 1164 | Date | Date | Date | mm/dd/yy | |
| 1165 | Operator_Authority | Operator Authority | N/A | 0 | 31 |


*Maximum and minimum amplitude values depend on the user's settings.

**Maximum and minimum power values depend on the model of the user's Power Supply.

D.4.2 Weld History IDs

Table D.3 Weld History IDs

| ID | Description | ID | Description |
|----|-----------------------|-----|-----------------------|
| 1 | Cycle Count | 20 | Reserved |
| 2 | User ID | 21 | Reserved |
| 3 | Part-ID | 22 | Force B |
| 4 | Preset # | 23 | Force A |
| 5 | Preset Rev | 24 | Pressure |
| 6 | Preset Validated | 25 | Frequency Min |
| 7 | Actuator Assembly | 26 | Frequency Max |
| 8 | Power Supply Assembly | 27 | Frequency Start |
| 9 | Stack Assembly | 28 | Frequency End |
| 10 | Weld Time | 29 | Frequency Change |
| 11 | Peak Power | 30 | Cycle Time |
| 12 | Energy | 31 | Hold Force |
| 13 | Reserved | 32 | Trigger Force |
| 14 | Downspeed | 33 | Power Supply Serial # |
| 15 | Weld Absolute | 34 | Actuator Serial # |
| 16 | Total Absolute | 35 | Time |
| 17 | Weld Collapse | 36 | Date |
| 18 | Total Collapse | 37 | Preset Name |
| 19 | Amplitude Start | 38* | Alarm Info |

| NOTICE | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>*Alarm Info will only be populated with data in the return string if the associated weld had an alarm. Otherwise this field will be empty.</p> |

D.4.3 Event History IDs

Table D.4 Event History IDs

| ID | Description |
|----|-------------------|
| 1 | Event # |
| 2 | Preset # |
| 3 | Preset Rev |
| 4 | User ID |
| 5 | Event ID |
| 6 | Serial # |
| 7 | Date/Time |
| 8 | Event Reason |
| 9 | Event Description |

D.4.4 Alarm Log IDs

Table D.5 Alarm Log IDs

| ID | Description |
|----|-----------------------|
| 1 | Alarm # |
| 2 | Cycle # |
| 3 | Preset Rev |
| 4 | Preset # |
| 5 | Alarm ID |
| 6 | User ID |
| 7 | Actuator Assembly |
| 8 | Power Supply Assembly |
| 9 | Date/Time |

D.4.5 UserID Table IDs

Table D.6 User ID Table IDs

| ID | Description |
|----|----------------------|
| 1 | User ID |
| 2 | Password |
| 3 | User Level |
| 4 | Status |
| 5 | Password Expire Time |
| 6 | First Time Login |
| 7 | Date/Time |

D.4.6 User Level IDs


Table D.7 User Level IDs

| ID | Description |
|----|-------------|
| 0 | Operator |
| 1 | Technician |
| 2 | Supervisor |
| 3 | Executive |

D.4.7 Operator Authority IDs

Table D.8 Operator Authority IDs

| ID | Description |
|----|------------------------|
| 1 | Reset Alarm |
| 2 | Run Invalidated Preset |
| 4 | Recall Preset |
| 8 | Run Calibration |
| 16 | Reset Batch Counter |

| NOTICE | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <p>For Setting more than one authority at once, add the values mentioned in Table D.8.</p> <p>Example: For giving Reset Alarm and Reset batch count authority at once, send $(16 + 1) = 17$.</p> |

Appendix E: Manual Revisions

E.1 Manual Revisions302

E.1 Manual Revisions

Refer to the following table to look for the appropriate manual revision for your Power Supply depending on the date of manufacture found on the information label in the rear of the Power Supply.

Table E.1 Manuals revision

| Manual Revision | Power Supply Manufacturing Date | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|----------------|
| | From | To |
| 01 | May 2015 | July 2015 |
| 02 | August 2015 | December 2015 |
| 03, 04 | January 2016 | July 2016 |
| 05 | August 2016 | November 2017 |
| 06 | December 2017 | August 2018 |
| 07 | September 2018 | June 2019 |
| 08, 09, 10 | July 2019 | October 2019 |
| 11 | April 2020 | November 2020 |
| 12 | December 2020 | September 2022 |
| 13 | October 2022 | May 2023 |
| 14 | June 2023 | May 2024 |
| 15 | July 2024 | June 2025 |
| 16 | July 2025 | To date |

Figure E.1 Location of the information Label in the 2000Xc Power Supply



Index

A

- AB Amplitude 27
- AB Delay 27
- AB Time 27
- Absolute 123
- Absolute Cutoff 27
- Absolute Distance 27, 122
- Absolute Mode 27
- Absolute Position 27
- Accept-as-is 27
- Acoustic Stack 87
- Act Clr Output 27, 130
- Act Settings 148
- Actual 27
- Actuator 18, 27
- Actuator Alignment 193
- Actuator Base 47
- Actuator Cold Start 166
- Actuator Controls 25, 190
- Actuator Operation 189
- Actuator Performance 46
- Actuator Settings 192
- Actuator Support 47
- Add User 138
- Adjust While Running 21
- Afterburst 21, 27, 128
- Air Cylinder Consumption 70
- Air Filter 45, 69
- Air Pressure Indicator 192
- Alarm Beeper 27
- Alarm Index 234
- Alarm Log 27, 183
- Alarms 233
- Alphanumeric Keypad 116
- Amp A 27
- Amp B 27
- Amp Control 27, 152
- Amplitude 27
- Amplitude % 123
- Amplitude Graph 27
- Amplitude Step 28, 123
- Amplitude Stepping 21
- Authority Check 28, 147
- Auto Scale Graph 28
- Auto Seek 17
- Automatic 28
- Automatic Preset Naming 21
- Automation 28, 146
- AutoTune with Memory (AT/M) 17
- Autotuning 21

B

- Bargraph Scales 145
- Basic/Expert 28, 140
- Batch Setup 28, 128
- Battery 222
- Beep 28
- Beepers 146
- Booster 19, 28
- Branson
 - how to contact 10
- Button Types 116

C

- Cables 61
- Cal Actuator 28, 180
- Cal Sensor 28
- Calibration 178, 198
- Call Full System 180
- Carriage and Slide System 18
- Carriage Door 25
- Change Password 186
- Circuit Boards 218
- Circuit Descriptions 52
- Circuits 210
- Clamping Force 28
- Clear Preset 174
- Cold Start 28, 165
- Cold Start Procedures 214
- Collapse 122
- Collapse Distance 28, 121
- Collapse Limits 21
- Collapse Mode 28
- Color Setup 160
- Column Setup 145
- Compatibility 20
- Component Verify 151
- Components Verify 28
- Control Limits 21, 28, 129
- Converter 19, 28
- Converters and Boosters 54
- Copy Now 181
- Counters 29
- Cover 217
- Cycle Aborts 21, 29, 130
- Cycle Counter 139
- Cycle Modified Alarms 235
- Cycle Time 21

D

- Date 140
- Date Stamp 21
- DC Power Module 53
- DC Power Supply 221
- Default User 99
- Define/Edit Sequence 177
- Delivery and Handling 37
- Diagnostic User I/O 169
- Diagnostics 164

- Digital Amplitude 21
- Digital Filter 29, 152
- Digital Frequency 29
- Digital Horn Test 21
- Digital Tune 167
- Digital Tuning 21
- Digital UPS 21, 132
- DIP Switch 83
- Downspeed 21, 29, 125
- Downspeed Control 25, 193
- Downspeed Tuning 29, 135, 152
- Dynamic Follow Through 22

E

- Electrical 44
- Electrical Input Power Ratings 68
- Electrical Requirements 44
- Emergency Stop 84, 194
- Emissions 8
- Encoder 18, 21
- Energy 121
- Energy Brake 134
- Energy Braking 29
- Energy Compensation 21, 29
- Energy Mode 29
- English (USCS)/Metric Units 21
- Environmental Requirements 44
- Environmental Specifications 38, 68
- Event History 29, 184
- Events 267, 268, 301, 302
- Executive 29
- Ext Presets 141
- Ext U/S Delay 131
- External Amplitude Control 29
- External Frequency Control 29
- External Monitor 113
- External U/S Delay 29
- Extra Cooling 29, 141

F

- F Actual 29
- F Memory 30
- Factory Air 69
- Factory Air Source 193
- Failure of Alarms 237
- FBWF 105
- FDA 26, 198
- Features 21
- Force 30
- Force Act 30
- Force Graph 30
- Force/Col Graph 30
- Foreign Languages 21
- Freq Chg 30
- Freq End 30
- Freq Max 30
- Freq Min 30
- Freq Offset 151

- Freq Start 30
- Frequency 30
- Frequency Graph 30
- Frequency Offset 17, 21, 30, 134
- Front Panel Controls 24, 114

G

- General Alarm 30
- General Precautions 6
- Glossary 27
- Gnd Det. Mode 30
- Graphs 22, 188
- Ground Det. Cutoff 30
- Ground Detect 122
- Guards 84

H

- Handling and Unpacking 57
- Help 96
- History Utility 112
- Hold Force 30
- Hold Pressure 30, 126
- Hold Time 30, 123
- Horn 19
- Horn Clamp 30, 142
- Horn Down 22, 31, 170
- Horn Down Display 22
- Horn Down Mode 22
- Horn Scan 22
- Horn Signature 167
- Horn Travel 193
- how to contact Branson 10

I

- I/O Connector 31
- igital Tune 165
- Indicator Light 25
- Input Power 74
- Input Power Plug 82
- Installation and Setup 55
- Installation Requirements 62
- Installation Steps 71
- Intended Use of the System 7
- Interconnect 76
- Introduction 15
- Inventory 60

K

- Key 31, 152
- Keypad 116

L

- Lamp 218
- Language 142
- Limit Switch 47
- Limits, Control 22
- Limits, Reject 22

- Limits, Suspect 22
- Line Board 52
- Line Regulation 17
- Linear Encoder 31, 50
- Load Regulation 17
- Location 62
- Login 185

M

- Main Menu 31, 119
- Maintenance 197
- Max Energy 31
- Mechanical Stop 25, 48, 194
- Membrane 219
- Membrane Keyboard 22
- Memory Full 31, 151
- Min Energy 31
- Minus Limit 31
- Missing Part 31
- Models Covered 16
- Module 220
- Modules 218
- Mounting the Stand 71

N

- Network Connection 105
- No Cycle Alarms 241
- Note Alarms 265
- Numeric Keypad 116

O

- odify User 139
- Operating System 100
- Operation 97
- Operator 31
- Operator Authority 31, 139
- Output Power 75
- Overload Alarms 263

P

- P/Col Graph 31
- P/Force Graph 31
- Parameter Entry 22
- Parameter Range 22, 31
- Part ID 140
- Part ID Scan 31
- Parts Lists 204
- Parts Replacement 216
- Password 99
- Password Protection 22
- Password Recovery 187
- Password Recovery Kit 31, 187
- Peak Power 32, 121, 122
- Peak Power Cutoff 32
- Physical Description 47
- Plus Limit 32
- Pneumatic Air Prep 32

- Pneumatic Connections 45, 69
- Pneumatic Requirements 45
- Pneumatic System 19, 48
- Pneumatic Tubing 45, 69
- Post Weld Seek 22, 32, 132
- Power Bar Graph 24
- Power Button 24
- Power Graph 32
- Power Match Curve 131
- Power Switch 218
- Preset 32
- Preset Barcode Start 32, 141
- Preset Name 32
- Presets 22
- Presets, External Selection 32
- Pressure Limit 130
- Pressure Limits 32
- Pressure Regulator 25
- Pressure Sensor 22
- Pressure Step 32
- Pretrg @ D 32
- Pretrig Amp 32
- Pretrigger 22, 32, 127
- Preventive Maintenance 199
- Principle of Operation 17
- PRK 187
- Process Alarm 22

R

- Rack Mount 85
- Rack Mount Enclosure 21
- Ramp Time 22
- Rapid Traverse 22, 126
- Rapid Traverse/RAPID TRAV 32
- Ready Position 32
- Recall Preset 32, 174
- Receiving 39
- Recondition the Stack 200
- Regulated Air Pressure 192
- Regulatory Compliance 8
- Reject Limits 33, 133
- Replacement Parts 207
- Reset Button 24
- Reset Required 33, 152
- Returning Equipment 41
- Run Screen 33

S

- Safety and Support 1
- Safety Circuit Alarms 196
- Safety Control 22
- Safety Requirements and Warnings 2
- Sampling Rate 21
- Save Preset 173
- Save/Recall Presets 127, 172
- S-Beam Load Cell 17, 18, 22, 33, 50
- Screen Setup 146, 159
- Scrub Amplitude 123

Scrub Time 33, 123
Seek 22, 33
Sequencing Presets 176
Service Events 214
Setting Limits 133
Setting up the Workplace 8
Setup Alarms 247
Setup Checking 23
Setup Limits 33
Shipping and Handling 38
Slide Mechanism 47
Software Upgrade 162
Stack 33
Stand 58
Start Frequency 33, 165, 167
Start Scan 168
Start Screen 137
Start Switch Connection 77
Step @ Col (in) 33
Step @ E (J) 33
Step @ Ext Sig 33
Step @ Pwr (%) 33
Step @ T (S) 33
Step Pressure 124
Streaming Data Setup 182
Suggested Spares 208
Supervisor 33
Suspect Limits 33, 134
Suspect or Reject Alarms 242
SV Interlock 33
Symbols Found in this Manual 2
Symbols Found on the Product 4
Sys Components 33, 150
System Alarm Tables 234
System Cables 208
System Configuration 136
System Control Board 52
System Information 23, 161
System Protection 17

T

Technical Specifications 43
Technician 33
Test Button 24
Test Diagnostics 23
Test Scale 34
Testing 95, 117
Time 121, 140
Time Mode 34
Timed Seek 23
Timeout 34, 135
Trig Delay 34
Trigger 34, 122
Trigger Beeper 34
Trigger Distance 122
Trigger Force 122
Troubleshooting 211
True Wattmeter 23

U

- Ultrasonic Stack 19
- Units 137
- Unpacking 40
- Upper Limit Switch (ULS) 34
- UPS 34
- USB 111, 181
- USB Copy Now 34
- USB Data 139
- USB Memory 174
- USB Streaming Data Setup 34
- User I/O 34, 53, 143
- User I/O Interface 79
- User ID Setup 34
- User-defined Limits 34

V

- Validation 175
- Velocity Graph 34
- Verify Preset 174
- View Current Setup 163
- View Setup 35
- Voltage Test Points 214

W

- Weld Count 35
- Weld Energy 35, 122
- Weld Force 35
- Weld History 35, 171
- Weld History Setup 35, 149
- Weld Modes 23, 121
- Weld Pressure 125
- Weld Results 35
- Weld Scale 35
- Weld Setup 120
- Weld Time 35, 122
- Welder Addr 152
- Windows Setup 35, 141
- Write In Field 127
- Write In Fields 35

X

- X Scale Graph 35